



(12) **DEMANDE DE BREVET CANADIEN**
CANADIAN PATENT APPLICATION
(13) **A1**

(86) **Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date:** 2022/04/06
(87) **Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date:** 2022/10/13
(85) **Entrée phase nationale/National Entry:** 2023/10/06
(86) **N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.:** US 2022/023633
(87) **N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.:** 2022/216798
(30) **Priorité/Priority:** 2021/04/06 (US63/171,543)

(51) **Cl.Int./Int.Cl.** **A61K 39/00** (2006.01),
C12Q 1/6886 (2018.01), **G01N 33/574** (2006.01)
(71) **Demandeurs/Applicants:**
BPG BIO, INC., US;
THE HENRY M. JACKSON FOUNDATION FOR THE
ADVANCEMENT OF MILITARY MEDICINE, INC.,
US;
WINDBER RESEARCH INSTITUTE, US
(72) **Inventeurs/Inventors:**
KIEBISH, MICHAEL ANDREW, US;
KOVATICH, ALBERT JOHN, US;
SHAH, PUNIT, US;
NARAIN, NIVEN RAJIN, US; ...

(54) **Titre : MARQUEURS PROTEIQUES POUR LE PRONOSTIC DE LA PROGRESSION DU CANCER DU SEIN**
(54) **Title: PROTEIN MARKERS FOR THE PROGNOSIS OF BREAST CANCER PROGRESSION**

(57) **Abrégé/Abstract:**

Methods for prognosing the risk of progression in a ER-positive breast cancer (e.g., luminal B 1 breast cancer) subject are provided, such methods including the detection of levels of a variety of biomarkers prognostic of progression. Compositions in the form of kits and panels of reagents for detecting the biomarkers of the invention are also provided.



(72) **Inventeurs(suite)/Inventors(continued):** SARANGARAJAN, RANGAPRASAD, US; WANG, GUISONG, US;
HOOKE, JEFFERY A., US; HU, HAI, US; CAMPBELL, JAMIE LEIGH, US; CUTLER, MARY L., US;
SHRIVER, CRAIG D., US

(74) **Agent:** BORDEN LADNER GERVAIS LLP

Date Submitted: 2023/10/06

CA App. No.: 3214833

Abstract:

Methods for prognosing the risk of progression in a ER-positive breast cancer (e.g., luminal B 1 breast cancer) subject are provided, such methods including the detection of levels of a variety of biomarkers prognostic of progression. Compositions in the form of kits and panels of reagents for detecting the biomarkers of the invention are also provided.

PROTEIN MARKERS FOR THE PROGNOSIS OF BREAST CANCER PROGRESSION

RELATED APPLICATION

This application claims the benefit of priority to U.S. Provisional Application No. 63/171,543, filed on April 6, 2021, the entire contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

BACKGROUND

A. FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates generally to novel biomarkers and combinations thereof which can be used to prognose, monitor, and treat ER-positive breast cancer. The invention also generally relates to methods for prognosing, monitoring, and treating ER-positive breast cancer involving the detection of biomarkers of the invention.

B. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Breast cancer is the most commonly diagnosed and most common cause of cancer deaths among females worldwide. The incidence of breast cancer has been rising in many countries, as many changes in women's reproductive health and practices, including lower age of menarche, late age of first pregnancy, fewer pregnancies, and shorter period of breastfeeding, are associated with higher risk of breast cancer. Other risk factors such as genetics, obesity, alcohol consumption, inactivity, and hormone replacement therapy have also contributed to the increase in breast cancer incidences (Howell et al. (2014) Breast Cancer Res. 16(5):446). In the United States, there were about 3.6 million women living with breast cancer in 2017, and approximately 12.9% of all women will be diagnosed with breast cancer at somepoint during their lifetimes (National Cancer Institute, Cancer Stat Facts: Female Breast Cancer, July 2020).

Breast cancer can begin with tumor growth in the milk duct (ductal carcinoma) or milk gland (lobular carcinoma). Invasive breast cancer can spread to the surrounding normal tissue and metastasize to a distant site. Patients with breast cancer have a much higher survival rate if the cancer is diagnosed at an earlier stage. About 70-80% of patients with early-stage, non-metastatic disease are curable, while advanced breast cancer with distant organ metastases is considered incurable with currently available therapies. Breast cancer is categorized into 3 major subtypes based on the presence or absence of molecular markers for estrogen or progesterone receptors (ER and PR, respectively) and human epidermal growth factor 2 (ERBB2, formerly HER2). The subtypes determine which systemic therapy a patient

receives (endocrine therapy, chemotherapy, antibody therapy, small-molecule therapy, or a combination) in addition to surgical resection and radiation options (Waks and Winer (2019) JAMA. 321(3):288-300).

Estrogen receptor (ER)-positive breast cancers, which comprise the majority of breast malignancies, carry a better prognosis for disease-free survival and overall survival than ER-negative breast cancers (Pagani et al. (2009) Breast Cancer Res Treat. 117(2): 319–324). Nevertheless, some ER-positive breast cancers are more invasive and tend to metastasize more frequently than other ER-positive tumors. A low degree of differentiation and the presence of metastasis in the axillary lymph nodes are typical characteristics. The underlying reasons for the more aggressive character are poorly understood. Thus, there is a need in the art for methods for stratifying, prognosing and treating the ER-positive breast cancers which are more invasive and tend to metastasize more frequently than other ER-positive tumors, as well as predicting treatment outcomes.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is based, at least in part, on the discovery that the markers in Tables 1 and 2 are differentially regulated in ER-positive breast cancer subjects that progressed. In particular, the invention is based on the surprising discovery that the markers in Tables 1 and 2 are either elevated or depressed in tissue samples of patients with ER-positive breast cancer that progressed.

Accordingly, in one aspect, the present invention provides methods for prognosing the risk for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression in a subject. The methods comprise: (a) detecting the level of a breast cancer marker in a biological sample from the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2; and (b) comparing the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample with a predetermined threshold value, wherein the level of the breast cancer marker above or below the predetermined threshold value indicates that the subject is at risk for progression of ER-positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the subject has been previously diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the subject is concurrently diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments, the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the subject has been previously treated for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

5 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the subject has not yet been treated for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises recurrence of the breast cancer in the subject.

In some embodiments, recurrence of the breast cancer is in the breast.

10 In some embodiments, recurrence of the breast cancer is in a location other than the breast.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises metastasis of the breast cancer in the subject.

15 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises tumor growth.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the biological sample comprises a breast tissue sample or a breast tumor tissue sample.

20 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the biological sample comprises circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumor cells, *e.g.*, in bone marrow and exosomes. In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast ductal fluid exudent, *e.g.*, a fluid collected from the milk ducts.

In some embodiments, the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample is modulated, *e.g.*, increased or decreased, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

25 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the breast cancer marker comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from one or any combination of the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

30 In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject. In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, and/or one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, increased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 1, comprising CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, increased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, decreased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 1, comprising GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, decreased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with proteoglycans in cancer, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of PRKCB, HCLS1, DDX5, ITPR1, AKT1, GPC1, FZD1, SDC2, PDCD4 and THBS1.

5 In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with oxidative phosphorylation, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of COX4B1, ATP5H, PPA1, ATP5J, ATP5F1, PPA2, and COX5A.

 In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with valine, leucine, and isoleucine degradation, wherein the breast cancer marker
10 is selected from the group consisting of CLN5, CTSS, FUCA2, NAGLU, LGMN and CTSH.

 In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with lysosome, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of HADHB, ALDH6A1, HADHA and IVD.

 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the level of the breast cancer marker
15 is detected by one or more of HPLC/UV-Vis spectroscopy, enzymatic analysis, mass spectrometry, NMR, immunoassay, ELISA, chromatography, or any combination thereof, or by determining the level of its corresponding mRNA in the biological sample.

 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the methods further comprise selecting a treatment regimen based on the risk of progression of breast cancer in the subject.

20 In some embodiments, the treatment regimen comprises further monitoring of the subject for progression of breast cancer.

 In some embodiments, the treatment regimen is selected from the group consisting of (a) radiation therapy, (b) chemotherapy, (c) surgery, (d) hormone therapy, (e) antibody therapy, (f) immunotherapy, (g) cytokine therapy, (h) growth factor therapy, (i) watchful
25 waiting, and (i) any combination of (a)-(i).

 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the methods further comprise obtaining a biological sample from the subject.

 In some embodiments, the subject has been previously diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

30 In some embodiments, the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

 In some embodiments, the subject has not yet been diagnosed as having estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from a tumor biopsy.

In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from resection of a breast cancer tumor.

5 In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumor cells, *e.g.*, in bone marrow and exosomes. In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast ductal fluid exudent, *e.g.*, a fluid collected from the milk ducts.

10 In another aspect, the present invention provide methods for prognosing the risk for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression in a subject, wherein the risk for progression is determined concurrently with the diagnosis of estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer in the subject, comprising: (a) diagnosing ER positive breast cancer in the subject, (b) detecting the level of a breast cancer marker in a biological sample from the subject, wherein the breast cancer comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and
15 2, and (c) comparing the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample with a predetermined threshold value, wherein the level of the breast cancer marker above or below the predetermined threshold value indicates that the subject is at an increased risk for ER positive breast cancer progression.

20 In some embodiments, the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises recurrence of the breast cancer in the subject.

In some embodiments, recurrence of the breast cancer is in the breast.

25 In some embodiments, recurrence of the breast cancer is in a location other than the breast.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises metastasis of the breast cancer in the subject.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises tumor growth.

30 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the biological sample comprises a breast tissue sample or a breast tumor tissue sample.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the breast cancer marker comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from one or any combination of the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject. In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, and/or one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, increased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 1, comprising CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, increased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, decreased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 1, comprising GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2,

COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, decreased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with proteoglycans in cancer, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of PRKCB, HCLS1, DDX5, ITPR1, AKT1, GPC1, FZD1, SDC2, PDCD4 and THBS1.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with oxidative phosphorylation, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of COX4B1, ATP5H, PPA1, ATP5J, ATP5F1, PPA2, and COX5A.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with valine, leucine, and isoleucine degradation, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of CLN5, CTSS, FUCA2, NAGLU, LGMN and CTSH.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with lysosome, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of HADHB, ALDH6A1, HADHA and IVD.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the level of the breast cancer marker is detected by one or more of HPLC/UV-Vis spectroscopy, enzymatic analysis, mass spectrometry, NMR, immunoassay, ELISA, chromatography, or any combination thereof, or by determining the level of its corresponding mRNA in the biological sample.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, further comprising selecting a treatment regimen based on the risk of progression of breast cancer in the subject.

In some embodiments, the treatment regimen comprises further monitoring of the subject for breast cancer progression.

In some embodiments, the treatment regimen is selected from the group consisting of (a) radiation therapy, (b) chemotherapy, (c) surgery, (d) hormone therapy, (e) antibody

therapy, (f) immunotherapy, (g) cytokine therapy, (h) growth factor therapy, (i) watchful waiting, and (i) any combination of (a)-(i).

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the methods further comprise obtaining a biological sample from the subject diagnosed as having ER-positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments, the subject has been previously diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments, the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

In some embodiments, the subject has not yet been diagnosed as having estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from a tumor biopsy.

In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from resection of a breast cancer tumor.

In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumor cells, *e.g.*, in bone marrow and exosomes. In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast ductal fluid exudent, *e.g.*, a fluid collected from the milk ducts.

In another aspect, the present invention provides methods for monitoring estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression in a subject, the method comprising: (1) detecting the level of a breast cancer marker in a first biological sample obtained at a first time from the subject having ER positive breast cancer, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, (2) detecting the level of the breast cancer marker in a second biological sample obtained from the subject at a second time, wherein the second time is later than the first time, and (3) comparing the level of the breast cancer marker in the second sample with the level of the breast cancer marker in the first sample; wherein a change in the level of the breast cancer marker is indicative of progression of ER-positive breast cancer in the subject.

In some embodiments, the ER positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, a difference between the first detected level and the second detected level indicates a change in breast cancer status in the subject.

In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast tissue sample or a breast tumor tissue sample.

In some embodiments, the subject is treated for breast cancer prior to obtaining the second sample.

5 In yet another aspect, the present invention provides a method for identifying an agent that modulates estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer or ER positive breast cancer progression, comprising (a) contacting a cell with a test compound, (b) determining the expression and/or activity of a breast cancer marker in the cell, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, and (c) identifying an agent that modulates ER-positive breast cancer wherein the agent modulates the expression and/or activity of the breast cancer marker in the cell.

In some embodiments, the ER-positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the cell comprises a breast cancer cell.

15 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the test compound is a small molecule, an antibody, or a nucleic acid inhibitor.

In another aspect, the invention provide methods for treating estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer in a subject, comprising administering to the subject a modulator of a breast cancer marker, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.

20 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the modulator increases breast cancer marker level or activity. In some other embodiments, the modulator decreases breast cancer marker level or activity.

25 In another aspect, the present invention provides kits for detecting a breast cancer marker in a biological sample from a subject having estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer, comprising one or more reagents for measuring the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample from the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Table 1 and a set of instructions for measuring the level of the breast cancer marker.

30 In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the reagent is an antibody that binds to the marker or an oligonucleotide that is complementary to the corresponding mRNA of the breast cancer marker.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to a predetermined threshold

value, and/or one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to a predetermined threshold value.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, increased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 1, comprising CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, increased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26.

In some embodiments, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, decreased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 1, comprising GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a modulated level, *e.g.*, decreased level, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B,

ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with proteoglycans in cancer, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of PRKCB, HCLS1, DDX5, ITPR1, AKT1, GPC1, FZD1, SDC2, PDCD4 and THBS1.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with oxidative phosphorylation, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of COX4B1, ATP5H, PPA1, ATP5J, ATP5F1, PPA2, and COX5A.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with valine, leucine, and isoleucine degradation, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of CLN5, CTSS, FUCA2, NAGLU, LGMN and CTSH.

In some embodiments, the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers associated with lysosome, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group consisting of HADHB, ALDH6A1, HADHA and IVD.

In another aspect, the present invention provides panels for use in a method of prognosing the risk of progression of estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer in a subject, the panel comprising one or more detection reagents, wherein each detection reagent is specific for the detection of a breast cancer marker, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, the breast cancer marker comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from one or any combination of the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

In some embodiments of the foregoing aspects, one of the panels and a set of instructions for obtaining prognosis information based on a level of the breast cancer marker are components of a kit.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figures 1A and 1B: Cohort of progressive and non-progressive ER-positive breast cancer subjects (1A), and medical history of events that occurred to the progressors (1B).

Figure 2: Volcano plot representing the top 148 proteins differential between progressors and non-progressors at $|\log_2FC| > 0.58$ and $P\text{-value} < 0.05$.

Figure 3: Principle component analysis (PCA) of non-progressors and progressors on 148 significantly differential proteins.

Figure 4: Heatmap of normalized expression levels of 148 significantly differential proteins, showing separate clusters of progressors and non-progressors. Clustering method was hierarchical clustering using Euclidean distancing measure and Ward clustering algorithm.

Figure 5: Results of KEGG pathway analysis showing that several differential proteins are linked in cancer proteoglycan, oxidative phosphorylation, valine/leucine/isoleucine degradation and lysosome pathways.

Figure 6: 41 significant proteins resulted from univariate analysis of 148 differential proteins for disease-free survival outcome; 27 proteins were down-regulated and 14 proteins were up-regulated in the progressors.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

A. OVERVIEW

Treatment decisions for breast cancer are often based on the subtypes of breast cancer that a patient has, determined from a biopsy or tumor sample from the breast tissue of the patient. Estrogen receptor (ER)-positive breast cancer patients are often prescribed hormone therapy in addition to surgery and generally have good outcomes. However, some ER-positive patients progress with continuing tumor growth, recurrence and/or metastasis, which might be prevented by more aggressive treatment and careful monitoring early in the course of treatment. There is a need to identify ER-positive breast cancer patients with poor-prognosis early in order to adjust treatment regimens accordingly. The present invention addresses this need by providing the use of biomarkers, *i.e.*, one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination of two, three, four or more thereof, for the accurate and reliable identification of subjects at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

As described herein, the invention at hand is based, at least in part, on the discovery that the one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A,

GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, are differentially regulated in ER-positive progressors, and serve as

5 surprising discovery that the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, are differentially expressed, *e.g.*, either increased or decreased as

10 compared to ER-positive non-progressors, in the tissue of ER-positive progressors, and are thus useful in the prognosis for ER-positive breast cancer subjects.

Accordingly, the invention provides methods for prognosing and/or monitoring (*e.g.*, monitoring of disease progression or treatment) an oncological disease state, *e.g.*, progression of ER-positive breast cancer, in a subject.

15 In one embodiment, these one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more

20 pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, can serve as useful *prognostic* biomarkers, serving to inform on the likely progression of ER-positive breast cancer in a subject, with or without receiving treatment.

Accordingly, the invention provides methods that use the one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4,

25 DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor type, in the prognosis of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, prediction of the

30 progression of ER-positive breast cancer, or the course or outcome of ER-positive breast cancer with or without treatment), in the monitoring of ER-positive breast cancer, and in the assessment of therapies intended to treat ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, the one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB,

MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, as a theragnostic or predictive marker).

Furthermore, these differentially expressed markers are known to be involved in several biological pathways that are associated with several characteristics, such as dysregulated metabolism, dysregulated immune response, epithelial mesenchymal transformation (EMT), chromosomal instability, vascular inflammation, evasion of apoptosis, insensitivity to growth stimuli, growth signaling autonomy, and/or pharmacologic secondary effects. In particular, some makers are associated strongly with glucose utilization, indicating dysregulated metabolism. These markers also have a strong signature in structural alterations to support replication, indicating EMT. Some of the markers are microtubule or chromosome open-reading-frame proteins, which implicates chromosomal instability. The identity of these markers suggest that the molecular subtypes of ER-positive breast cancer are further associated with one or more characteristics, such as dysregulated metabolism, chromosomal instability and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment. Thus, in some embodiments, any of the foregoing characteristics are modulated, *e.g.* ,up-regulated or down-regulated, in the breast cancer tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment.

The following is a detailed description of the invention provided to aid those skilled in the art in practicing the present invention. Those of ordinary skill in the art may make modifications and variations in the embodiments described herein without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Unless otherwise defined, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. The terminology used in the description of the invention herein is for describing particular embodiments only and is not intended to be limiting of the invention. All publications, patent applications, patents, figures and other references mentioned herein are expressly incorporated by reference in their entirety.

Although any methods and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein can also be used in the practice or testing of the present invention, the preferred methods and materials are now described. All publications mentioned herein are incorporated herein by reference to disclose and described the methods and/or materials in connection with which the publications are cited.

B. DEFINITIONS

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the meaning commonly understood by a person skilled in the art to which this invention belongs. The following references, the entire disclosures of which are incorporated herein by

5 reference, provide one of skill with a general definition of many of the terms (unless defined otherwise herein) used in this invention: Singleton et al., Dictionary of Microbiology and Molecular Biology (2nd ed. 1994); The Cambridge Dictionary of Science and Technology (Walker ed., 1988); The Glossary of Genetics, 5th Ed., R. Rieger et al. (eds.), Springer Verlag (1991); and Hale & Marham, the Harper Collins Dictionary of Biology (1991). Generally, the
10 procedures of molecular biology methods described or inherent herein and the like are common methods used in the art. Such standard techniques can be found in reference manuals such as for example Sambrook et al., (2000, Molecular Cloning--A Laboratory Manual, Third Edition, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratories); and Ausubel et al., (1994, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, New-York).

15 The following terms may have meanings ascribed to them below, unless specified otherwise. However, it should be understood that other meanings that are known or understood by those having ordinary skill in the art are also possible, and within the scope of the present invention. All publications, patent applications, patents, and other references mentioned herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety. In the case of conflict, the
20 present specification, including definitions, will control. In addition, the materials, methods, and examples are illustrative only and not intended to be limiting.

As used herein, the singular forms "a", "and", and "the" include plural references unless the context clearly dictates otherwise. All technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning.

25 Unless specifically stated or obvious from context, as used herein, the term "**about**" is understood as within a range of normal tolerance in the art, for example within 2 standard deviations of the mean. About can be understood as within 10%, 9%, 8%, 7%, 6%, 5%, 4%, 3%, 2%, 1%, 0.5%, 0.1 %, 0.05%, or 0.01% of the stated value. Unless otherwise clear from context, all numerical values provided herein can be modified by the term about.

30 As used herein, the term "**amplification**" refers to any known in vitro procedure for obtaining multiple copies ("amplicons") of a target nucleic acid sequence or its complement or fragments thereof. In vitro amplification refers to production of an amplified nucleic acid that may contain less than the complete target region sequence or its complement. Known in

vitro amplification methods include, *e.g.*, transcription-mediated amplification, replicase-mediated amplification, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification, ligase chain reaction (LCR) amplification and strand-displacement amplification (SDA including multiple strand-displacement amplification method (MSDA)). Replicase-mediated amplification uses self-replicating RNA molecules, and a replicase such as Q- β -replicase (*e.g.*, Kramer et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,786,600). PCR amplification is well known and uses DNA polymerase, primers and thermal cycling to synthesize multiple copies of the two complementary strands of DNA or cDNA (*e.g.*, Mullis et al., U.S. Patent Nos. 4,683,195, 4,683,202, and 4,800,159). LCR amplification uses at least four separate oligonucleotides to amplify a target and its complementary strand by using multiple cycles of hybridization, ligation, and denaturation (*e.g.*, EP Pat. App. Pub. No. 0 320 308). SDA is a method in which a primer contains a recognition site for a restriction endonuclease that permits the endonuclease to nick one strand of a hemimodified DNA duplex that includes the target sequence, followed by amplification in a series of primer extension and strand displacement steps (*e.g.*, Walker et al., U.S. Patent. No. 5,422,252). Two other known strand-displacement amplification methods do not require endonuclease nicking (Dattagupta et al., U.S. Patent. No. 6,087,133 and U.S. Patent. No. 6,124,120 (MSDA)). Those skilled in the art will understand that the oligonucleotide primer sequences of the present invention may be readily used in any in vitro amplification method based on primer extension by a polymerase. (see generally Kwoh et al., 1990, Am. Biotechnol. Lab. 8:14-25 and (Kwoh et al., 1989, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86, 1173-1177; Lizardi et al., 1988, BioTechnology 6:1197-1202; Malek et al., 1994, Methods Mol. Biol., 28:253-260; and Sambrook et al., 2000, Molecular Cloning--A Laboratory Manual, Third Edition, CSH Laboratories). As commonly known in the art, the oligos are designed to bind to a complementary sequence under selected conditions.

As used herein, the term “**antigen**” refers to a molecule, *e.g.*, a peptide, polypeptide, protein, fragment, or other biological moiety, which elicits an antibody response in a subject, or is recognized and bound by an antibody.

As used herein, “**breast cancer**,” refers to any malignant or pre-malignant form of cancer of the breast. The term includes breast ductal carcinomas in situ, invasive ductal carcinomas, inflammatory breast cancer, metastatic carcinomas and pre-malignant conditions. The term also encompasses any stage or grade of cancer in the breast. Where the breast cancer is “metastatic,” the cancer has spread or metastasized beyond the breast tissue to a distant site, such as the lung or the bone.

As used herein, the term "**complementary**" refers to the broad concept of sequence complementarity between regions of two nucleic acid strands or between two regions of the same nucleic acid strand. It is known that an adenine residue of a first nucleic acid region is capable of forming specific hydrogen bonds ("base pairing") with a residue of a second nucleic acid region which is antiparallel to the first region if the residue is thymine or uracil. Similarly, it is known that a cytosine residue of a first nucleic acid strand is capable of base pairing with a residue of a second nucleic acid strand which is antiparallel to the first strand if the residue is guanine. A first region of a nucleic acid is complementary to a second region of the same or a different nucleic acid if, when the two regions are arranged in an antiparallel fashion, at least one nucleotide residue of the first region is capable of base pairing with a residue of the second region. Preferably, the first region comprises a first portion and the second region comprises a second portion, whereby, when the first and second portions are arranged in an antiparallel fashion, at least about 50%, and preferably at least about 75%, at least about 90%, or at least about 95% of the nucleotide residues of the first portion are capable of base pairing with nucleotide residues in the second portion. More preferably, all nucleotide residues of the first portion are capable of base pairing with nucleotide residues in the second portion.

The term "**control sample**" or "**control,**" as used herein, refers to any clinically relevant comparative sample, including, for example, a sample from a normal, healthy subject not afflicted with an oncological disease (e.g., breast cancer, e.g., ER-positive breast cancer), or a sample from a subject having never been diagnosed with an oncological disease (e.g., breast cancer, e.g., ER-positive breast cancer), or a sample from a subject previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer whose cancer has not progressed after treatment or without receiving treatment, or a sample from a subject previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer whose cancer has progressed, or a sample from a subject from an earlier time point, e.g., prior to treatment, an earlier tumor assessment time point, at an earlier stage of treatment, or prior to onset of breast cancer (e.g., ER-positive breast cancer). A control sample can be a purified sample, protein, and/or nucleic acid provided with a kit. Such control samples can be diluted, for example, in a dilution series to allow for quantitative measurement of levels of analytes, e.g., markers, in test samples. A control sample may include a sample derived from one or more subjects. A control sample may also be a sample made at an earlier time point from the subject to be assessed. For example, the control sample could be a sample taken from the subject to be assessed before the onset of breast

cancer, or at an earlier stage of disease. The control sample may also be a sample from an animal model, or from a tissue or cell line derived from the animal model of ER-positive breast cancer. The level of activity or expression of one or more markers (*e.g.*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15 or more markers) in a control sample consists of a group of
5 measurements that may be determined, *e.g.*, based on any appropriate statistical measurement, such as, for example, measures of central tendency including average, median, or modal values. In one embodiment, “different from a control” is preferably statistically significantly different from a control.

As used herein, “**changed, altered, increased or decreased as compared to a**
10 **control**” sample or subject is understood as having a level of the analyte or diagnostic, prognostic or therapeutic indicator (*e.g.*, marker) to be detected at a level that is statistically different, *e.g.*, increased or decreased, as compared to a sample from a normal, healthy, untreated, or abnormal state control subject. In other words, the difference between the level of the marker in the subject and that in a corresponding control or reference is statistically
15 significant. Change as compared to control can also include a difference in the rate of change of the level of one or more markers obtained in a series of at least two subject samples obtained over time. Determination of statistical significance is within the ability of those skilled in the art and can include any acceptable means for determining and/or measuring statistical significance, such as, for example, the number of standard deviations from the
20 mean that constitute a positive or negative result, an increase in the detected level of a biomarker in a sample (*e.g.*, a sample from an ER-positive breast cancer) versus a control sample, wherein the increase is above some threshold value, or a decrease in the detected level of a biomarker in a sample (*e.g.*, a sample from an ER-positive breast cancer) versus a control or sample, wherein the decrease is below some threshold value. The threshold value
25 can be determined by any suitable means by measuring the biomarker levels in a plurality of tissues or samples known to have poor prognosis, *e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer progressors, and comparing those levels to a control sample, *e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer non-progressors, and calculating a statistically significant threshold value.

The term “**control level**” refers to an accepted or pre-determined level of a marker in
30 a subject sample. A control level can be a range of values. Marker levels can be compared to a single control value, to a range of control values, to the upper level of normal, or to the lower level of normal as appropriate for the assay.

In one embodiment, the control is a standardized control, such as, for example, a control which is predetermined using an average of the levels of expression of one or more markers from a population of normal, healthy subjects having never been afflicted with breast cancer. In certain embodiments, the control can be from a subject, or a population of subject, having an abnormal breast state. For example, the control can be from a subject having breast cancer, ER-positive breast cancer, ER-positive breast cancer that has progressed, or ER-positive breast cancer that has not progressed and has good prognosis, with or without receiving treatment. In certain embodiments, the control can be predetermined from a population of subjects who have previously been diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer but are no longer afflicted with breast cancer after receiving treatment, *e.g.*, non-progressors. It is understood that not all markers will have different levels for each of the abnormal breast states listed. It is understood that a combination of marker levels may be most useful to distinguish between ER-positive breast cancer subjects at risk for progression from ER-positive breast cancer subjects not at risk for progression, possibly in combination with other prognostic methods. Further, marker levels in biological samples can be compared to more than one control sample (*e.g.*, normal, abnormal, from the same subject, from a population control). Marker levels can be used in combination with other signs or symptoms of an abnormal breast state to provide a prognosis for the subject.

A control can also be a sample from a subject at an earlier time point, *e.g.*, a baseline level prior to suspected progression of disease, before the diagnosis of a disease, at an earlier assessment time point during watchful waiting, before the treatment with a specific agent (*e.g.*, chemotherapy, hormone therapy) or intervention (*e.g.*, radiation, surgery). In certain embodiments, a change in the level of the marker in a subject can be more significant than the absolute level of a marker, *e.g.*, as compared to control.

As used herein, “**detecting**”, “**detection**”, “**determining**”, and the like are understood to refer to an assay performed for identification of one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2. The amount of marker expression or activity detected in the sample can be none or below the level of detection of the assay or method.

As used herein, the term “**DNA**” or “**RNA**” molecule or sequence (as well as sometimes the term “oligonucleotide”) refers to a molecule comprised generally of the deoxyribonucleotides or ribonucleotides, respectively, that have the following bases: adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), and thymine (T) in DNA or uracil (U) in RNA, *i.e.*, T is replaced by uracil (U).

The terms “**disorders**”, “**diseases**”, and “**abnormal state**” are used inclusively and refer to any deviation from the normal structure or function of any part, organ, or system of the body (or any combination thereof). A specific disease is manifested by characteristic symptoms and signs, including biological, chemical, and physical changes, and is often associated with a variety of other factors including, but not limited to, demographic, environmental, employment, genetic, and medically historical factors. An early stage disease state includes a state wherein one or more physical symptoms are not yet detectable. Certain characteristic signs, symptoms, and related factors can be quantitated through a variety of methods to yield important diagnostic information. As used herein the disorder, disease, or abnormal state is an abnormal breast state, including ER-positive breast cancer.

As used herein, a sample obtained at an “**earlier time point**” is a sample that was obtained at a sufficient time in the past such that clinically relevant information could be obtained in the sample from the earlier time point as compared to the later time point. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least four weeks earlier. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least six weeks earlier. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least two months earlier. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least three months earlier. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least six months earlier. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least nine months earlier. In certain embodiments, an earlier time point is at least one year earlier. Multiple subject samples (*e.g.*, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or more) can be obtained at regular or irregular intervals over time and analyzed for trends in changes in marker levels. Appropriate intervals for testing for a particular subject can be determined by one of skill in the art based on ordinary considerations.

As used herein, the term “**estrogen receptor positive breast cancer**” or “ER-positive breast cancer” or “hormone receptor-positive breast cancer” refers to a category of breast cancer whose cancer cells express the estrogen receptor (ER) and grow in the presence of the hormone estrogen. The presence of estrogen and progesterone receptors in breast cancer is determined through a hormone receptor test, which is usually carried out via immunohistochemical staining of breast tumor or tissue biopsy taken from a breast cancer subject. A tumor or biopsy sample staining positive for the estrogen receptor (ER) indicates the breast cancer subject as having ER-positive breast cancer. ER-positive breast cancer may also be positive for the progesterone receptor (PR). A subject having ER-positive breast cancer is often treated with hormone therapy drugs that lower estrogen levels or block

estrogen receptors. ER-positive breast cancer can be further categorized into luminal A, B1 and B2 subtypes. Luminal A is characterized by low levels of Ki-67, luminal B1 is characterized by higher levels of Ki-67 and being HER2-negative, and luminal B2 is characterized by being HER2-positive. In some embodiments, the ER-positive breast cancer may be further characterized by one or more characteristics, such as dysregulated metabolism, dysregulated immune response, epithelial mesenchymal transformation (EMT), chromosomal instability, vascular inflammation, evasion of apoptosis, insensitivity to growth stimuli, growth signaling autonomy, and/or pharmacologic secondary effects within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment.

As used herein, the term “**ER-positive progressor**” or “ER-positive breast cancer progressor” refers to a subject whose ER-positive breast cancer progresses after diagnosis, with or without receiving treatment to a more advanced stage, wherein the progression may include one or more adverse events including *e.g.*, tumor growth, spreading of primary tumor to the surrounding tissue within the breast, spreading of cancer cells to lymph nodes, metastasis to other body parts, recurrence of breast cancer in the breast or in a location other than the breast after or during treatment, and death. In some embodiments, ER-positive progressor refers to a subject whose ER-positive breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage with treatment, *i.e.*, during or after treatment. In some embodiments, ER-positive progressor refers to a subject whose ER-positive breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage with or without treatment.

In some embodiments, the ER-positive progressors have markers that are modulated, *e.g.* increased or decreased, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in a subject, wherein the markers are associated with one or more characteristics, such as dysregulated metabolism, dysregulated immune response, epithelial mesenchymal transformation (EMT), chromosomal instability, vascular inflammation, evasion of apoptosis, insensitivity to growth stimuli, growth signaling autonomy, and/or pharmacologic secondary effects within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment.

In some embodiments, at least one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine or more molecules involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are upregulated in ER-positive progressors. In other embodiments, at least one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine or more molecules involved in metabolism, chromosomal

stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are downregulated in ER-positive progressors.

In some embodiments, one or more pathways involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are upregulated in ER-positive progressors. In other embodiments, one or more pathways involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are downregulated in ER-positive progressors.

When breast cancer is diagnosed at the non-metastatic stage, therapy consists of (i) local therapy, which include surgical resection and sampling or removal of axillary lymph nodes with consideration of postoperative radiation, and (ii) systemic therapy, which is guided by subtype of breast cancer determined from the breast tissue biopsy or tumor. The primary systemic therapy for ER-positive non-metastatic breast cancer is endocrine therapy, which counteracts estrogen-promoted tumor growth. Standard endocrine therapy consists of oral antiestrogen medication taken daily for 5 years, and options differ according to menopausal status. Tamoxifen is a selective estrogen receptor modulator that competitively inhibits estrogen's binding to ER and is effective in both pre- and postmenopausal women. Aromatase inhibitors (anastrozole, exemestane, and letrozole) decrease circulating estrogen levels by inhibiting conversion of androgens to estrogen and are effective only in postmenopausal women. In addition to endocrine therapy, additional treatment such as ovarian suppression (by drugs or surgery) and chemotherapy might also be prescribed by physicians to an ER-positive breast cancer subject (Waks and Winer (2019) JAMA. 321(3):288-300).

When breast cancer progresses to the metastatic stage, therapeutic goals are prolonging life and symptom palliation since metastatic breast cancer remains incurable in virtually all affected patients. First line of treatment for ER-positive metastatic breast cancer is also endocrine therapy, possibly incorporating other inhibitors downstream of ER signaling, *e.g.* CDK 4/5 inhibitors, in first or second line of therapy. However, resistance develops in 30-50% of patients treated with these endocrine therapies (Chia *et al.* (2005) Lancet. 365:1665-1666). After resistance develops to the available hormonal options, patients transition to later lines of therapy with single-agent sequential chemotherapy.

The term “**expression**” is used herein to mean the process by which a polypeptide is produced from DNA. The process involves the transcription of the gene into mRNA and the

translation of this mRNA into a polypeptide. Depending on the context in which used, “expression” may refer to the production of RNA, or protein, or both.

As used herein, “**fold change ratio**” or “**FC ratio**” refers to a change, *e.g.*, increase or decrease, of the expression or level of a marker, *e.g.*, one or more marker selected from
5 Tables 1 and 2. In some embodiments, the FC ratio is greater than 1, which indicates an up-regulation or increase in the expression or level of the marker. In other embodiments, the FC ratio is less than 1, indicating a down-regulation or decrease in the expression or level of the marker. FC ratio can also be calculated and expressed as a Log unit. When the FC ratio is expressed as a Log FC or $\log_2(\text{FC})$ value, a Log FC or $\log_2(\text{FC})$ value greater than 0 is
10 equivalent to an FC ratio greater than 1, indicating an up-regulation or increase in the expression or level of the marker. Alternatively, a Log FC or $\log_2(\text{FC})$ value less than 0 is equivalent to an FC ratio less than 1, indicating a down-regulation or decrease in the expression or level of the marker.

As used herein, “**greater predictive value**” is understood as an assay that has
15 significantly greater sensitivity and/or specificity, preferably greater sensitivity and specificity, than the test to which it is compared. The predictive value of a test can be determined using an ROC analysis. In an ROC analysis, a test that provides perfect discrimination or accuracy between normal and disease states would have an area under the curve (AUC)=1, whereas a very poor test that provides no better discrimination than random
20 chance would have AUC=0.5. As used herein, a test with a greater predictive value will have a statistically improved AUC as compared to another assay. The assays are performed in an appropriate subject population.

A “**higher level of expression**”, “**higher level**”, “**increased level**,” and the like of a marker refers to an expression level in a test sample that is greater than the standard error of
25 the assay employed to assess expression, and is preferably at least 25% more, at least 50% more, at least 75% more, at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, at least six, at least seven, at least eight, at least nine, or at least ten times the expression level of the marker in a control sample (*e.g.*, sample from an ER-positive breast cancer non-progressor) and preferably, the average expression level of the marker or markers in several control samples.

30 As used herein, the term “**hybridization**,” as in “nucleic acid hybridization,” refers generally to the hybridization of two single-stranded nucleic acid molecules having complementary base sequences, which under appropriate conditions will form a thermodynamically favored double-stranded structure. Examples of hybridization conditions

can be found in the two laboratory manuals referred above (Sambrook et al., 2000, supra and Ausubel et al., 1994, supra, or further in Higgins and Hames (Eds.) "Nucleic acid hybridization, a practical approach" IRL Press Oxford, Washington D.C., (1985)) and are commonly known in the art. In the case of a hybridization to a nitrocellulose filter (or other such support like nylon), as for example in the well-known Southern blotting procedure, a nitrocellulose filter can be incubated overnight at a temperature representative of the desired stringency condition (60-65°C for high stringency, 50-60°C for moderate stringency and 40-45°C for low stringency conditions) with a labeled probe in a solution containing high salt (6xSSC or 5xSSPE), 5xDenhardt's solution, 0.5% SDS, and 100 µg/ml denatured carrier DNA (e.g., salmon sperm DNA). The non-specifically binding probe can then be washed off the filter by several washes in 0.2xSSC/0.1% SDS at a temperature which is selected in view of the desired stringency: room temperature (low stringency), 42°C (moderate stringency) or 65°C (high stringency). The salt and SDS concentration of the washing solutions may also be adjusted to accommodate for the desired stringency. The selected temperature and salt concentration is based on the melting temperature (T_m) of the DNA hybrid. Of course, RNA-DNA hybrids can also be formed and detected. In such cases, the conditions of hybridization and washing can be adapted according to well-known methods by the person of ordinary skill. Stringent conditions will be preferably used (Sambrook et al., 2000, supra). Other protocols or commercially available hybridization kits (e.g., ExpressHyb® from BD Biosciences Clontech) using different annealing and washing solutions can also be used as well known in the art. As is well known, the length of the probe and the composition of the nucleic acid to be determined constitute further parameters of the hybridization conditions. Note that variations in the above conditions may be accomplished through the inclusion and/or substitution of alternate blocking reagents used to suppress background in hybridization experiments. Typical blocking reagents include Denhardt's reagent, BLOTTO, heparin, denatured salmon sperm DNA, and commercially available proprietary formulations. The inclusion of specific blocking reagents may require modification of the hybridization conditions described above, due to problems with compatibility. Hybridizing nucleic acid molecules also comprise fragments of the above described molecules. Furthermore, nucleic acid molecules which hybridize with any of the aforementioned nucleic acid molecules also include complementary fragments, derivatives and allelic variants of these molecules. Additionally, a hybridization complex refers to a complex between two nucleic acid sequences by virtue of the formation of hydrogen bonds between complementary G and C

bases and between complementary A and T bases; these hydrogen bonds may be further stabilized by base stacking interactions. The two complementary nucleic acid sequences hydrogen bond in an antiparallel configuration. A hybridization complex may be formed in solution (*e.g.*, Cot or Rot analysis) or between one nucleic acid sequence present in solution and another nucleic acid sequence immobilized on a solid support (*e.g.*, membranes, filters, chips, pins or glass slides to which, *e.g.*, cells have been fixed).

As used herein, the term "**identical**" or "**percent identity**" in the context of two or more nucleic acid or amino acid sequences, refers to two or more sequences or subsequences that are the same, or that have a specified percentage of amino acid residues or nucleotides that are the same (*e.g.*, 60% or 65% identity, preferably, 70-95% identity, more preferably at least 95% identity), when compared and aligned for maximum correspondence over a window of comparison, or over a designated region as measured using a sequence comparison algorithm as known in the art, or by manual alignment and visual inspection. Sequences having, for example, 60% to 95% or greater sequence identity are considered to be substantially identical. Such a definition also applies to the complement of a test sequence. Preferably the described identity exists over a region that is at least about 15 to 25 amino acids or nucleotides in length, more preferably, over a region that is about 50 to 100 amino acids or nucleotides in length. Those having skill in the art will know how to determine percent identity between/among sequences using, for example, algorithms such as those based on CLUSTALW computer program (Thompson Nucl. Acids Res. 2 (1994), 4673-4680) or FASTDB (Brutlag Comp. App. Biosci. 6 (1990), 237-245), as known in the art. Although the FASTDB algorithm typically does not consider internal non-matching deletions or additions in sequences, *i.e.*, gaps, in its calculation, this can be corrected manually to avoid an overestimation of the % identity. CLUSTALW, however, does take sequence gaps into account in its identity calculations. Also available to those having skill in this art are the BLAST and BLAST 2.0 algorithms (Altschul Nucl. Acids Res. 25 (1977), 3389-3402). The BLASTN program for nucleic acid sequences uses as defaults a word length (W) of 11, an expectation (E) of 10, M=5, N=4, and a comparison of both strands. For amino acid sequences, the BLASTP program uses as defaults a wordlength (W) of 3, and an expectation (E) of 10. The BLOSUM62 scoring matrix (Henikoff Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA, 89, (1989), 10915) uses alignments (B) of 50, expectation (E) of 10, M=5, N=4, and a comparison of both strands. Moreover, the present invention also relates to nucleic acid molecules the sequence of which is degenerate in comparison with the sequence of an above-

described hybridizing molecule. When used in accordance with the present invention the term "being degenerate as a result of the genetic code" means that due to the redundancy of the genetic code different nucleotide sequences code for the same amino acid. The present invention also relates to nucleic acid molecules which comprise one or more mutations or deletions, and to nucleic acid molecules which hybridize to one of the herein described nucleic acid molecules, which show (a) mutation(s) or (a) deletion(s).

The term **"including"** is used herein to mean, and is used interchangeably with, the phrase "including but not limited to."

A subject **"at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression"** may or may not progress to a more advanced stage. Identification of a subject at risk for developing ER-positive breast cancer progression should be monitored for additional signs or symptoms of advanced stages of breast cancer. The methods provided herein for identifying a subject at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression can be used in combination with assessment of other known risk factors or signs of advanced-stages of breast cancer.

As used herein, the term **"in vitro"** refers to an artificial environment and to processes or reactions that occur within an artificial environment. In vitro environments can consist of, but are not limited to, test tubes and cell culture. The term **"in vivo"** refers to the natural environment (*e.g.*, an animal or a cell) and to processes or reaction that occur within a natural environment.

As used herein, a **"label"** refers to a molecular moiety or compound that can be detected or can lead to a detectable signal. A label is joined, directly or indirectly, to a molecule, such as an antibody, a nucleic acid probe or the protein/antigen or nucleic acid to be detected (*e.g.*, an amplified sequence). Direct labeling can occur through bonds or interactions that link the label to the nucleic acid (*e.g.*, covalent bonds or non-covalent interactions), whereas indirect labeling can occur through the use of a **"linker"** or bridging moiety, such as oligonucleotide(s) or small molecule carbon chains, which is either directly or indirectly labeled. Bridging moieties may amplify a detectable signal. Labels can include any detectable moiety (*e.g.*, a radionuclide, ligand such as biotin or avidin, enzyme or enzyme substrate, reactive group, chromophore such as a dye or colored particle, luminescent compound including a bioluminescent, phosphorescent or chemiluminescent compound, and fluorescent compound). Preferably, the label on a labeled probe is detectable in a homogeneous assay system, *i.e.*, in a mixture, the bound label exhibits a detectable change compared to an unbound label.

The terms “**level of expression of a gene**”, “**gene expression level**”, “**level of a marker**”, and the like refer to the level of mRNA, as well as pre-mRNA nascent transcript(s), transcript processing intermediates, mature mRNA(s) and degradation products, or the level of protein, encoded by the gene in the cell. The “level” of one of more biomarkers means the absolute or relative amount or concentration of the biomarker in the sample.

A “**lower level of expression**” or “**lower level**” or “**decreased level**” of a marker refers to an expression level in a test sample that is less than 90%, 85%, 80%, 75%, 70%, 65%, 60%, 55%, 50%, 45%, 40%, 35%, 30%, 25%, 20%, 15%, or 10% of the expression level of the marker in a control sample (*e.g.*, sample from an ER-positive breast cancer non-progressor) and preferably, the average expression level of the marker in several control samples.

As used herein, the term “**marker**” is, in one embodiment, a biological molecule, or a panel of biological molecules, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, whose altered level in a tissue or cell as compared to its level in a control tissue or cell, *e.g.*, a tissue or cell from a normal, healthy subject, or from a subject with a disease that has not progressed for a period of time, is associated with a disease state, *e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, ER-positive luminal B1 breast cancer) progression. Examples of biomarkers include, for example, polypeptides, peptides, polypeptide fragments, proteins, antibodies, hormones, polynucleotides, RNA or RNA fragments, microRNA (miRNAs), lipids, metabolites, or polysaccharides. In a preferred embodiment, the marker is detected in a breast tissue sample, *e.g.*, tumor resected from the breast, a breast tissue biopsy, or tumor resected from an axillary lymph node. In one embodiment, the marker is detected in a tumor resected from the breast. In one embodiment, the marker is detected in a breast tissue sample. In one embodiment, the marker is detected in a breast cancer tumor resected from an axillary lymph node. In certain embodiments, the tumor or breast tissue sample can be further processed to remove abundant proteins or proteins that are not marker proteins prior to analysis.

The term “marker” as used herein, also includes any one or more pathological or clinical feature or parameter. For example, as described herein, a marker includes clinical parameters such as, *e.g.*, cancer stage, *e.g.*, stage 0, stage I, stage II, stage III, stage IV, tumor size, age, performance status, estrogen- and progesterone-receptor status, HER2 status, or any

clinical and/or patient-related health data, for example, data obtained from an Electronic Medical Record (*e.g.*, collection of electronic health information about individual patients or populations relating to various types of data, such as, demographics, medical history, laboratory test results, radiology images, vital signs, personal statistics like weight, and
5 billing information).

As used herein, the term **“ER-positive breast cancer progression marker”** or **“marker for ER-positive breast cancer progression”** is a “marker” as set forth above, which is associated with ER-positive breast cancer subjects whose breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage . In some embodiments, the ER-positive breast cancer progression
10 marker is a marker which is associated with ER-positive breast cancer subjects whose breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage with treatment, or recurs after receiving treatment. In embodiments, the ER-positive breast cancer progression marker is a marker which is associated with ER-positive breast cancer subjects whose breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage with or without treatment, or recurs after receiving treatment. As used
15 herein, in one embodiment, an ER-positive breast cancer progression marker includes one or more of the markers set forth in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination
20 thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status.

Preferably, a marker of the present invention is modulated (*e.g.*, increased or decreased level) in a biological sample from a subject or a group of subjects having a first phenotype (*e.g.*, having a disease state, *e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer progression) as
25 compared to a biological sample from a subject or group of subjects having a second phenotype (*e.g.*, not having a disease state, *e.g.*, not having ER-positive breast cancer progression, *e.g.*, a control). A biomarker may be differentially present at any level, but is generally present at a level that is increased relative to normal or control levels by at least 5%, by at least 10%, by at least 15%, by at least 20%, by at least 25%, by at least 30%, by at
30 least 35%, by at least 40%, by at least 45%, by at least 50%, by at least 55%, by at least 60%, by at least 65%, by at least 70%, by at least 75%, by at least 80%, by at least 85%, by at least 90%, by at least 95%, by at least 100%, by at least 110%, by at least 120%, by at least 130%, by at least 140%, by at least 150%, or more; or is generally present at a level that is decreased

relative to normal or control levels by at least 5%, by at least 10%, by at least 15%, by at least 20%, by at least 25%, by at least 30%, by at least 35%, by at least 40%, by at least 45%, by at least 50%, by at least 55%, by at least 60%, by at least 65%, by at least 70%, by at least 75%, by at least 80%, by at least 85%, by at least 90%, by at least 95%, or by 100% (*i.e.*, absent).

5 A biomarker is preferably differentially present at a level that is statistically significant (*e.g.*, a p-value less than 0.05 and/or a q-value of less than 0.10 as determined using either Welch's T-test or Wilcoxon's rank-sum Test). As such, the difference between the level of a biomarker of the present invention and a corresponding control or reference value can be a statistically significant positive or negative value.

10 The term "**modulation**" refers to upregulation (*i.e.*, activation or stimulation), down-regulation (*i.e.*, inhibition or suppression) of a response (*e.g.*, level of a marker), or the two in combination or apart. A "modulator" is a compound or molecule that modulates, and may be, *e.g.*, an agonist, antagonist, activator, stimulator, suppressor, or inhibitor.

As used herein, "**nucleic acid molecule**" or "polynucleotides", refers to a polymer of
15 nucleotides. Non-limiting examples thereof include DNA (*e.g.*, genomic DNA, cDNA), RNA molecules (*e.g.*, mRNA) and chimeras thereof. The nucleic acid molecule can be obtained by cloning techniques or synthesized. DNA can be double-stranded or single-stranded (coding strand or non-coding strand [antisense]). Conventional ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) are included in the term "nucleic acid" and polynucleotides as
20 are analogs thereof. A nucleic acid backbone may comprise a variety of linkages known in the art, including one or more of sugar-phosphodiester linkages, peptide-nucleic acid bonds (referred to as "peptide nucleic acids" (PNA); Hydig-Hielsen et al., PCT Intl Pub. No. WO 95/32305), phosphorothioate linkages, methylphosphonate linkages or combinations thereof. Sugar moieties of the nucleic acid may be ribose or deoxyribose, or similar compounds
25 having known substitutions, *e.g.*, 2' methoxy substitutions (containing a 2'-O-methylribofuranosyl moiety; see PCT No. WO 98/02582) and/or 2' halide substitutions. Nitrogenous bases may be conventional bases (A, G, C, T, U), known analogs thereof (*e.g.*, inosine or others; see The Biochemistry of the Nucleic Acids 5-36, Adams et al., ed., 11th ed., 1992), or known derivatives of purine or pyrimidine bases (see, Cook, PCT Int'l Pub. No.
30 WO 93/13121) or "abasic" residues in which the backbone includes no nitrogenous base for one or more residues (Arnold et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,585,481). A nucleic acid may comprise only conventional sugars, bases and linkages, as found in RNA and DNA, or may include both conventional components and substitutions (*e.g.*, conventional bases linked via a

methoxy backbone, or a nucleic acid including conventional bases and one or more base analogs). An "isolated nucleic acid molecule", as is generally understood and used herein, refers to a polymer of nucleotides, and includes, but should not be limited to DNA and RNA. The "isolated" nucleic acid molecule is purified from its natural in vivo state, obtained by cloning or chemically synthesized.

As used herein, the term "**obtaining**" is understood herein as manufacturing, purchasing, or otherwise coming into possession of.

As used herein, "**oligonucleotides**" or "**oligos**" define a molecule having two or more nucleotides (ribo or deoxyribonucleotides). The size of the oligo will be dictated by the particular situation and ultimately on the particular use thereof and adapted accordingly by the person of ordinary skill. An oligonucleotide can be synthesized chemically or derived by cloning according to well-known methods. While they are usually in a single-stranded form, they can be in a double-stranded form and even contain a "regulatory region". They can contain natural rare or synthetic nucleotides. They can be designed to enhance a chosen criteria like stability for example. Chimeras of deoxyribonucleotides and ribonucleotides may also be within the scope of the present invention.

As used herein, the term "**one or more**" or "**at least one of**" is understood as each value 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, and 20 and any value greater than 20.

The term "**or**" is used inclusively herein to mean, and is used interchangeably with, the term "and/or," unless context clearly indicates otherwise.

As used herein, "**patient**" or "**subject**" can mean either a human or non-human animal, preferably a mammal. By "**subject**" is meant any animal, including horses, dogs, cats, pigs, goats, rabbits, hamsters, monkeys, guinea pigs, rats, mice, lizards, snakes, sheep, cattle, fish, and birds. A human subject may be referred to as a patient. It should be noted that clinical observations described herein were made with human subjects and, in at least some embodiments, the subjects are human.

As used herein, "**preventing**" or "**prevention**" refers to a reduction in risk of acquiring a disease or disorder (*i.e.*, causing at least one of the clinical symptoms of the disease not to develop in a patient that may be exposed to or predisposed to the disease but does not yet experience or display symptoms of the disease). Prevention does not require that the disease or condition never occurs in the subject. Prevention includes delaying the onset or severity of the disease or condition.

As used herein, a “**predetermined threshold value**” or “**threshold value**” of a biomarker refers to the level of the biomarker (*e.g.*, the expression level or quantity (*e.g.*, ng/ml) in a biological sample) in a corresponding control sample or group of control samples obtained from, for example, a normal, healthy subject not afflicted with an oncological disease (*e.g.*, breast cancer), a subject having never been diagnosed with an oncological disease (*e.g.*, breast cancer), a subject previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer whose cancer state has not progressed (*e.g.*, with treatment, or with or without receiving treatment) or a subject previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer whose cancer state has progressed (*e.g.*, with treatment, or with or without receiving treatment), or a subject from an earlier time point, *e.g.*, prior to treatment, an earlier tumor assessment time point, at an earlier stage of treatment, or prior to onset of breast cancer. The predetermined threshold value may be determined prior to or concurrently with measurement of marker levels in a biological sample. The control sample may be from the same subject at a previous time or from different subjects.

As used herein, a “**probe**” is meant to include a nucleic acid oligomer or oligonucleotide that hybridizes specifically to a target sequence in a nucleic acid or its complement, under conditions that promote hybridization, thereby allowing detection of the target sequence or its amplified nucleic acid. Detection may either be direct (*i.e.*, resulting from a probe hybridizing directly to the target or amplified sequence) or indirect (*i.e.*, resulting from a probe hybridizing to an intermediate molecular structure that links the probe to the target or amplified sequence). A probe’s “target” generally refers to a sequence within an amplified nucleic acid sequence (*i.e.*, a subset of the amplified sequence) that hybridizes specifically to at least a portion of the probe sequence by standard hydrogen bonding or “base pairing.” Sequences that are “sufficiently complementary” allow stable hybridization of a probe sequence to a target sequence, even if the two sequences are not completely complementary. A probe may be labeled or unlabeled. A probe can be produced by molecular cloning of a specific DNA sequence or it can also be synthesized. Numerous primers and probes which can be designed and used in the context of the present invention can be readily determined by a person of ordinary skill in the art to which the present invention pertains.

As used herein, the terminology “**prognosis**”, “**staging**” and “**determination of aggressiveness**” are defined herein as the prediction of the degree of severity of the breast cancer and of its evolution as well as the prospect of recovery as anticipated from usual

course of the disease. According to the present invention, once the aggressiveness of the breast cancer has been determined, appropriate methods of treatments can be chosen.

As used herein, the term “**progress**” is understood as a disease, *e.g.* breast cancer, such as ER+ breast cancer, developing in an unfavorable course and increasing in scope or severity. The severity of breast cancer is ranked in 5 stages (according to Clinical Prognostic or Pathologic Prognostic Staging): generally, stage 0 describes non-invasive breast cancer where there is no evidence of cancer cells breaking out of the part of the breast in which they started; stage I describes invasive breast cancer where cancer cells are breaking through to or invading normal surrounding breast tissue; stage II and III describe invasive breast cancer that has developed into a large tumor and/or has spread to axillary lymph nodes or to lymph nodes near the breastbone; and stage IV describes invasive breast cancer that has spread beyond the breast and nearby lymph nodes to other organs of the body. Other information such as receptor type (ER, PR, HER2 positive or negative) and tumor grade are also taken into account and may influence the stage assigned to a subject (see, *e.g.*, www.breastcancer.org/symptoms/diagnosis/staging).

As used herein, the term “**progression**” or “**progression of breast cancer**” refers to adverse development of breast cancer, and comprises one or more adverse events, *e.g.*, tumor growth, spreading of primary tumor to the surrounding tissue within the breast, spreading of cancer cells to lymph nodes, metastasis to other body parts, recurrence of breast cancer in the breast or in a location other than the breast after or during treatment, and death due to one or more of these adverse events. In some embodiments, progression refers to adverse development of breast cancer with treatment, *i.e.*, during or after treatment. In some embodiments, progression refers to adverse development of breast cancer with or without treatment.

As used herein, the term “**progressor**” or “**breast cancer progressor**” refers to a subject whose breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage, wherein the progression may include one or more adverse events including *e.g.*, tumor growth, spreading of primary tumor to the surrounding tissue within the breast, spreading of cancer cells to lymph nodes, metastasis to other body parts, recurrence of breast cancer in the breast or in a location other than the breast after or during treatment, and death. In some embodiments, progressor refers to a subject whose breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage with treatment, *i.e.*, during or after treatment. In some embodiments, progressor refers to a subject whose breast cancer progresses to a more advanced stage with or without treatment.

As used herein, the term “**non-progressor**” refers to a subject whose breast cancer has not progressed for a relevant period of time after diagnosis. In some embodiments, non-progressor refers to a subject whose breast cancer has not progressed to a more advanced stage with treatment, *i.e.*, during or after treatment. In some embodiments, non-progressor refers to a subject whose breast cancer has not progressed to a more advanced stage with or without treatment. In some embodiments, a non-progressor refers to a subject whose breast cancer has not progressed for at least 3 years, at least 4 years, or at least 5 years after diagnosis and/or treatment.

In some embodiments, the ER-positive non-progressors have markers that are modulated, *e.g.* increased or decreased, when compared to the predetermined threshold value in a subject, wherein the markers are associated with one or more characteristics, such as dysregulated metabolism, dysregulated immune response, epithelial mesenchymal transformation (EMT), chromosomal instability, vascular inflammation, evasion of apoptosis, insensitivity to growth stimuli, growth signaling autonomy, and/or pharmacologic secondary effects within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment.

In some embodiments, at least one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine or more molecules involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are upregulated in ER-positive non-progressors. In other embodiments, at least one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine or more molecules involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are downregulated in ER-positive non-progressors.

In some embodiments, one or more pathways involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are upregulated in ER-positive non-progressors. In other embodiments, one or more pathways involved in metabolism, chromosomal stability, and/or epithelial-mesenchymal transition, within the tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, are downregulated in ER-positive non-progressors.

As used herein, “**prophylactic**” or “**therapeutic**” treatment refers to administration to the subject of one or more agents or interventions to provide the desired clinical effect. If it is administered prior to clinical manifestation of the unwanted condition (*e.g.*, disease or other unwanted state of the host animal) then the treatment is prophylactic, *i.e.*, it protects the host against developing at least one sign or symptom of the unwanted condition, whereas if

administered after manifestation of the unwanted condition, the treatment is therapeutic (*i.e.*, it is intended to diminish, ameliorate, or maintain at least one sign or symptom of the existing unwanted condition or side effects therefrom).

As used herein, a "**reference level**" of a biomarker means a level of the biomarker that is indicative of a particular disease state, phenotype, or lack thereof, as well as combinations of disease states, phenotypes, or lack thereof. A "positive" reference level of a biomarker means a level that is indicative of a particular prognosis, disease state or phenotype. A "negative" reference level of a biomarker means a level that is indicative of a lack of a particular prognosis, disease state or phenotype. For example, a "progression reference level" of a biomarker means a level of a biomarker that is indicative of a progression of ER-positive breast cancer in a subject, and a "progression-negative reference level" of a biomarker means a level of a biomarker that is indicative of no progression of ER-positive breast cancer in a subject. A "reference level" of a biomarker may be an absolute or relative amount or concentration of the biomarker, a presence or absence of the biomarker, a range of amount or concentration of the biomarker, a minimum and/or maximum amount or concentration of the biomarker, a mean amount or concentration of the biomarker, and/or a median amount or concentration of the biomarker; and, in addition, "reference levels" of combinations of biomarkers may also be ratios of absolute or relative amounts or concentrations of two or more biomarkers with respect to each other. Appropriate positive and negative reference levels of biomarkers for a particular progression, disease state, phenotype, or lack thereof may be determined by measuring levels of desired biomarkers in one or more appropriate subjects, and such reference levels may be tailored to specific populations of subjects (*e.g.*, a reference level may be stage-matched so that comparisons may be made between biomarker levels in samples from subjects of a certain cancer stage and reference levels for a particular progression, disease state, phenotype, or lack thereof in a certain cancer stage). Such reference levels may also be tailored to specific techniques that are used to measure levels of biomarkers in biological samples (*e.g.*, LC-MS, GC-MS, etc.), where the levels of biomarkers may differ based on the specific technique that is used.

As used herein, "**sample**" or "**biological sample**" includes a specimen or culture obtained from any source. Biological samples can be obtained from blood (including any blood product, such as whole blood, plasma, serum, or specific types of cells of the blood), urine, saliva, seminal fluid, and the like. Biological samples also include tissue samples, such as biopsy tissues or pathological tissues (*e.g.*, tumor tissue) that have previously been frozen

or fixed (*e.g.*, formaline snap frozen, cytological processing, etc.). In an embodiment, the biological sample is a biopsy tissue from the breast. In an embodiment, the biological sample is a tumor resected from the breast. In another embodiment, the biological sample is a tumor resected from an axillary lymph node.

5 As use herein, the phrase "**specific binding**" or "**specifically binding**" when used in reference to the interaction of an antibody and a protein or peptide means that the interaction is dependent upon the presence of a particular structure (*i.e.*, the antigenic determinant or epitope) on the protein; in other words the antibody is recognizing and binding to a specific protein structure rather than to proteins in general. For example, if an antibody is specific for
10 epitope "A," the presence of a protein containing epitope A (or free, unlabeled A) in a reaction containing labeled "A" and the antibody will reduce the amount of labeled A bound to the antibody.

The phrase "**specific identification**" is understood as detection of a marker of interest with sufficiently low background of the assay and cross-reactivity of the reagents used such
15 that the detection method is diagnostically and/or prognostically useful. In certain embodiments, reagents for specific identification of a marker bind to only one isoform of the marker. In certain embodiments, reagents for specific identification of a marker bind to more than one isoform of the marker. In certain embodiments, reagents for specific identification of a marker bind to all known isoforms of the marker.

20 As used herein, the phrase "**subject suspected of being at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression**" refers to a subject who has been previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer, is concurrently diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer, or has breast cancer but has not yet been diagnosed as having ER-positive breast cancer. The subject may have received treatment for localized ER-positive breast cancer, *e.g.*, surgery (*e.g.*,
25 mastectomy) or radiation therapy, and/or has received systemic treatment, *e.g.*, hormone/endocrine therapy and chemotherapy, or has not received any treatment.

The term "**such as**" is used herein to mean, and is used interchangeably, with the phrase "such as but not limited to."

30 As used herein, the term "**stage of cancer**" or "**tumor stage**" or "**T stage**" refers to a qualitative or quantitative assessment of the level of advancement of a cancer or tumor. Criteria used to determine the stage of a cancer or tumor include, but are not limited to, anatomic stage (*e.g.*, the size of the tumor, whether the tumor has spread to other parts of the body and where the cancer has spread), grade (tumor differentiation), degree of tumor

differentiation, and status of receptors (HER2, estrogen and progesterone receptors). The most widely used staging system for breast cancer is the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) TNM system, which classifies anatomic stage. When biomarker analysis is available, cancers are to be staged using other cancer characteristics (see the AJCC

5 guidelines, <https://cancerstaging.org/references-tools/deskreferences/Pages/Breast-Cancer-Staging.aspx>, last updated in March 2018).

Anatomic stage, also known as the T, N, M stage, describes the extent of the primary tumor (T stage), the absence or presence of spread to nearby lymph nodes (N stage) and the absence or presence of distant spread, or metastasis (M stage). The T (size) category
 10 describes the original (primary) tumor: TX means the tumor can't be assessed; T0 means there isn't any evidence of the primary tumor; Tis means the cancer is "in situ" (the tumor has not started growing into healthy breast tissue); and T1, T2, T3, T4: These numbers are based on the size of the tumor and the extent to which it has grown into neighboring breast tissue. The higher the T number, the larger the tumor and/or the more it may have grown into the
 15 breast tissue.

The N (lymph node involvement) category describes whether or not the cancer has reached nearby lymph nodes: NX means the nearby lymph nodes can't be assessed, for example, if they were previously removed. N0 means nearby lymph nodes do not contain cancer. N1, N2, N3 are based on the number of lymph nodes involved and how much cancer
 20 is found in them. The higher the N number, the greater the extent of the lymph node involvement.

The M (metastasis) category tells whether or not there is evidence that the cancer has traveled to other parts of the body: MX means metastasis cannot be assessed. M0 means there is no distant metastasis. M1 means that distant metastasis is present.

25 In some embodiments, Anatomic Stage/TNM stage, as used herein, is categorized as T0, T1, T2, T3, T4, N0, N1, N2, N3 with some stages separated further into subcategories, such as, for example, T1a, T1b, T4a, T4b, or further denoted by method of staging (clinical detection or pathological assesment), for example, cN1, cN2a, pN1, pN2. The characteristics of each of these subcategories are well known in the art and can be found in the AJCC breast
 30 cancer staging guidelines.

In some embodiments, Anatomic Stage is separated into stage groups. For example, T0-N1-M0 and T2-N0-M0 subject has stage group IIA.

When available, data from biomarker analysis and other analyses are to be used in addition to the Anatomic Stage to assign cancer stage to a subject. Clinical Prognostic Stage is determined for any patients. Pathological Prognostic Stage is determined for patients who have surgical resection as the initial treatment before receipt of any systemic or radiation therapy. Both prognostic staging systems use T, N, M, tumor histologic grade, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), estrogen receptor (ER) and progesterone receptor (PR) status to classify breast cancer subject in to 5 groups: stage 0, stage I, stage II, stage III and stage IV, with some stages separated further into subcategories, such as, for example, stage Ia, stage IB. Details on how to combine patient information to assign a stage to a breast cancer subject can be found in the AJCC breast cancer staging guidelines.

In some embodiments, the cancer stage, alone or in combination with one or more additional clinical features or parameters, is used as a prognostic marker, in combination with one or more molecular markers described herein, to determine the likelihood of progression in an ER-positive breast cancer subject.

As used herein, the term “**staging**” refers to commonly used systems for staging/grading cancer, *e.g.*, breast cancer. Depending on the availability of information on different breast cancer characteristics of a subject, the staging system to be used can be anatomic staging, clinical prognostic staging or pathological prognostic staging. Details on the different types of staging for breast cancer can be found in the AJCC breast cancer staging guidelines.

The terms “**test compound**” and “**candidate compound**” refer to any chemical entity, pharmaceutical, drug, and the like that is a candidate for use to treat or prevent a disease, illness, sickness, or disorder of bodily function (*e.g.*, cancer). Test compounds comprise both known and potential therapeutic compounds. A test compound can be determined to be therapeutic by screening using the screening methods of the present invention. In some embodiments of the present invention, test compounds include antisense compounds.

The term “**therapeutic effect**” refers to a local or systemic effect in animals, particularly mammals, and more particularly humans caused by a pharmacologically active substance. The term thus means any substance intended for use in the diagnosis, cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of disease, or in the enhancement of desirable physical or mental development and conditions in an animal or human. A therapeutic effect can be understood as a decrease in tumor growth, decrease in tumor growth rate, stabilization or

decrease in tumor burden, stabilization or reduction in tumor size, stabilization or decrease in tumor malignancy, increase in tumor apoptosis, and/or a decrease in tumor angiogenesis.

As used herein, “**therapeutically effective amount**” means the amount of a compound that, when administered to a patient for treating a disease, is sufficient to effect such treatment for the disease, *e.g.*, the amount of such a substance that produces some desired local or systemic effect at a reasonable benefit/risk ratio applicable to any treatment, *e.g.*, is sufficient to ameliorate at least one sign or symptom of the disease, *e.g.*, to prevent progression of the disease or condition, *e.g.*, prevent tumor growth, decrease tumor size, induce tumor cell apoptosis, reduce tumor angiogenesis, prevent metastasis. When administered for preventing a disease, the amount is sufficient to avoid or delay onset of the disease. The “therapeutically effective amount” will vary depending on the compound, its therapeutic index, solubility, the disease and its severity and the age, weight, *etc.*, of the patient to be treated, and the like. For example, certain compounds discovered by the methods of the present invention may be administered in a sufficient amount to produce a reasonable benefit/risk ratio applicable to such treatment. Administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound may require the administration of more than one dose of the compound.

A “**transcribed polynucleotide**” or “nucleotide transcript” is a polynucleotide (*e.g.* an mRNA, hnRNA, a cDNA, or an analog of such RNA or cDNA) which is complementary to or having a high percentage of identity (*e.g.*, at least 80% identity) with all or a portion of a mature mRNA made by transcription of a marker of the invention and normal post-transcriptional processing (*e.g.* splicing), if any, of the RNA transcript, and reverse transcription of the RNA transcript.

As used herein, “**treatment**,” particularly “active treatment,” refers to performing an intervention to treat breast cancer in a subject. Depending on the stage and type of breast cancer, treatment options include, but are not limited to, therapy to, *e.g.*, reduce at least one of the growth rate or tumor burden, reduce or maintain the tumor size or the malignancy (*e.g.*, likelihood of metastasis) of the tumor, increase apoptosis in the tumor by one or more of administration of a therapeutic agent, *e.g.*, chemotherapy, hormone therapy, stimulate the immune system to eliminate cancer cells, *e.g.*, immunotherapy; administration of radiation therapy (*e.g.*, pellet implantation, brachytherapy), or surgical resection of the tumor, or any combination thereof appropriate for treatment of the subject based on grade and stage of the tumor and other routine considerations. Active treatment is distinguished from “watchful

waiting” (*i.e.*, not active treatment) in which the subject is monitored, but no interventions are performed. Watchful waiting can include administration of agents that alter effects caused by the recurrence that are not administered to alter the growth or pathology of the recurrence itself.

5 The recitation of a listing of chemical group(s) in any definition of a variable herein includes definitions of that variable as any single group or combination of listed groups. The recitation of an embodiment for a variable or aspect herein includes that embodiment as any single embodiment or in combination with any other embodiments or portions thereof.

10 Any compositions or methods provided herein can be combined with one or more of any of the other compositions and methods provided herein.

 Ranges provided herein are understood to be shorthand for all of the values within the range. For example, a range of 1 to 50 is understood to include any number, combination of numbers, or sub-range from the group consisting 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 15 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, or 50.

 Reference will now be made in detail to exemplary embodiments of the invention. While the invention will be described in conjunction with the exemplary embodiments, it will be understood that it is not intended to limit the invention to those embodiments. To the contrary, it is intended to cover alternatives, modifications, and equivalents as may be 20 included within the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the appended claims.

 Exemplary compositions and methods of the present invention are described in more detail in the following sections: (C) Biomarkers of the invention; (D) Breast tissue samples; (E) Detection and/or measurement of the biomarkers of the invention; (F) Isolated biomarkers; (G) Applications of biomarkers of the invention; (H) Therapeutics; (I) Drug 25 screening; and (J) Kits/panels.

C. BIOMARKERS OF THE INVENTION

 The present invention is based, at least in part, on the discovery that the markers (hereinafter “biomarkers”, “markers” or “markers of the invention”) in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, 30 ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, are differentially regulated in ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) subjects who progress versus ER-positive breast

cancer subjects who do not progress. In particular, the invention is based on the surprising discovery that the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, are either elevated (*e.g.*, CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2) or depressed (*e.g.*, GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2) in the breast tissue of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) patients who progressed.

Accordingly, the invention provides methods for prognosing, and/or monitoring (*e.g.*, monitoring of disease progression or treatment) breast cancer progression or lack thereof in a subject with ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer).

The invention also provides methods for treating or for adjusting treatment regimens based on prognostic information relating to the levels of one or more of the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, cancer stage, in a tumor or breast tissue of a subject having breast cancer, *e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer).

The invention further provides panels and kits for practicing the methods of the invention.

The present invention provides new markers and combinations of markers for use in prognosing breast cancer, and in particular, markers for use in prognosing ER-positive breast cancer, *e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer. These markers are particularly useful in identifying patients at risk for progression among ER-positive breast cancer patients, in assessing aggressiveness and metastatic potential of ER-positive breast cancer, identifying a composition for treating ER-positive breast cancer, assessing the efficacy of a compound for treating ER-positive breast cancer, monitoring the progression of ER-positive breast cancer, prognosing tumor development of ER-positive breast cancer, prognosing the recurrence of ER-positive breast cancer, and prognosing the survival of a subject with ER-positive breast cancer.

The markers of the invention include, but are not limited to, one or more ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) progressor markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE,

WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status.

5 In some embodiments of the present invention, other biomarkers can be used in connection with the methods of the present invention. As used herein, the term “one or more biomarkers” or “at least one of” is intended to mean that one or more (*e.g.*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, or more) markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, 10 ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, are assayed, optionally in combination with another breast cancer progression marker, and, in 15 various embodiments, more than one other biomarker may be assayed, such as one or more biomarkers from Tables 1 and 2, for example, any combination of ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, may be 20 assayed.

Methods, kits, and panels provided herein include any combination of *e.g.*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, 25 DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status. Any one marker or any combination of more than one marker selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, 30 ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more

pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, can be used in combination with another breast cancer marker.

The markers of the invention are meant to encompass any measurable characteristic that reflects in a quantitative or qualitative manner the physiological state of an organism, *e.g.*, whether the organism's ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) is progressing or prognosed to progress. The physiological state of an organism is inclusive of any disease or non-disease state, *e.g.*, a subject having breast cancer progression, breast cancer recurrence or a subject who is otherwise healthy. Said another way, the markers of the invention include characteristics that can be objectively measured and evaluated as indicators of normal processes, pathogenic processes, or pharmacologic responses to a therapeutic intervention, including, in particular, progression of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer). Examples of markers include, for example, polypeptides, peptides, polypeptide fragments, proteins, antibodies, hormones, polynucleotides, RNA or RNA fragments, microRNA (miRNAs), lipids (*e.g.* structural lipids or signaling lipids), polysaccharides, and other bodily metabolites that are indicative and/or predictive of the development of an oncological disease, *e.g.*, progression of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer), including one or more of the markers of Tables 1 and 2.

The markers of the invention, *e.g.*, one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, are indicative and/or predicative of progression of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) in a subject. In one aspect, the present invention relates to using, measuring, detecting, and the like of one or more of the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, for the prognosis of ER-positive breast cancer progression in a subject.

Modulated, *e.g.* increased or decreased, levels of the markers of the invention, *e.g.*, one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, are further indicative of characteristics within tumor cells and/or the tumor microenvironment, such as dysregulated metabolism, dysregulated immune response, epithelial mesenchymal transformation (EMT), chromosomal instability, vascular inflammation, evasion of apoptosis, insensitivity to growth stimuli, growth signaling autonomy, and/or pharmacologic secondary effects.

In another aspect, the present invention relates to using, measuring, detecting, and the like of one or more of the markers in Tables 1 and 2 alone, or together with one or more additional markers of progression of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer). Other markers that may be used in combination with the one or more markers in Tables 1 and 2 include any measurable characteristic described herein that reflects in a quantitative or qualitative manner the physiological state of an organism, *e.g.*, whether the organism's ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) is progressing. The physiological state of an organism is inclusive of any disease or non-disease state, *e.g.*, a subject having breast cancer progression, breast cancer recurrence or a subject who is otherwise healthy. The markers of the invention that may be used in combination with the markers in Tables 1 and 2 include characteristics that can be objectively measured and evaluated as indicators of normal processes, pathogenic processes, or pharmacologic responses to a therapeutic intervention, including, in particular, progression of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer). Such combination markers can be clinical features or parameters (*e.g.*, tumor stage, hormone receptor status, performance status), laboratory measures (*e.g.*, molecular markers, such as hormone receptors), imaging-based measures, or genetic or other molecular determinants. Examples of markers for use in combination with the markers in Tables 1 and 2 include, for example, polypeptides, peptides, polypeptide fragments, proteins, antibodies, hormones, polynucleotides, RNA or RNA fragments, microRNA (miRNAs), lipids, polysaccharides, and other bodily metabolites that are indicative and/or predictive of progression of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer).

In other embodiments, the present invention also involves the analysis and consideration of any clinical and/or patient-related health data, for example, data obtained from an Electronic Medical Record (*e.g.*, collection of electronic health information about individual patients or populations relating to various types of data, such as, demographics, medical history, medication and allergies, immunization status, laboratory test results, radiology images, vital signs, personal statistics like age and weight, and billing information).

The present invention also contemplates the use of particular combinations of the markers of Tables 1 and 2, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status. In one embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least two (2) members, which may include any two of the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, any two of ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least three (3) members, which may include any three of the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, any three of ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least four (4) members, which may include any four of the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status.

In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least five (5) members, which may include any five of the markers in Tables 1 and 2. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least six (6) members, which may include any six of the markers in Tables 1 and 2. In another embodiment, the invention

contemplates marker sets with at least seven (7) members, which may include any seven of the markers in Tables 1 and 2. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least eight (8) members, which may include any eight of the markers in Tables 1 and 2. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least nine (9) members, which may include any nine of the markers in Tables 1 and 2. In another embodiment, the invention contemplates marker sets with at least ten (10) members, which may include any ten of the markers in Tables 1 and 2. In other embodiments, the invention contemplates a marker set comprising at least 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, or 60 or more of the markers listed in Tables 1 and 2. In one embodiment, one or more markers are ranked A or B in any one or more of Tables 1 and 2, alone or in combination. In one embodiment, the markers are used alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status.

In certain embodiments, the markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, alone or in combination with one or more pathological or clinical features, *e.g.*, tumor stage and/or hormone receptor status, may be used in combination with at least one other marker, or more preferably, with at least two other markers, or still more preferably, with at least three other markers, or even more preferably with at least four other markers. Still further, the markers in Tables 1 and 2 in certain embodiments, may be used in combination with at least five other markers, or at least six other markers, or at least seven other markers, or at least eight other markers, or at least nine other markers, or at least ten other markers, or at least eleven other markers, or at least twelve other markers, or at least thirteen other markers, or at least fourteen other markers, or at least fifteen other markers, or at least sixteen other markers, or at least seventeen other markers, or at least eighteen other markers, or at least nineteen other markers, or at least twenty other markers. Further, the markers in Tables 1 and 2 may be used in combination with a multitude of other markers, including, for example, with between about 20-50 other markers, or between 50-100, or between 100-500, or between 500-1000, or between 1000-10,000 or markers or more.

In certain embodiments, the at least one other marker is any breast cancer marker or breast cancer prognostic marker previously known in the art. In certain other embodiments, the at least one other marker can include genes that have been described in the literature as being specifically expressed in the breast. These genes can include, for example, estrogen receptor (Sommer and Fuqua (2001) *Semin Cancer Biol*, 11(5):339-352), progesterone receptor (Daniel et al. (2011) *Expert Rev Endocrinol Metab*, 6(3):359-369), HER-2 (Ménard et al. (2001) *Oncology*, 61 Suppl 2:67-72), breast cancer genes 1 and 2 (BRCA1 and BRCA2) (Yang and Lippman. (1999) *Breast Cancer Res Treat*, 54(1):1-10), CA 27-29 (Beveridge (1999) *Int J Biol Markers*, 14(1):36-39.), CA 15-3 (Martín et al. (2006) *Anticancer Res* 26(5B):3965-3971), carcinoembryonic antigen (Beard and Haskell. (1986) *Am J Med.* 80(2):241-245), tissue polypeptide specific antigen (TPS) (O'Hanlon et al. (1996) *Eur J Surg Oncol.* 22(1):38-41), p53 (Gasco et al. (2002) *Breast Cancer Res.* 4(2):70-76), cathepsin D (Foekens et al. (1999) *Br J Cancer*, 79(2):300-307), cyclin E (Keyomarsi et al. *N Engl J Med.* 2002; 347(20):1566-1575), nestin (Liu et al. (2010) *Cancer Sci*, 101(3):815-819), ki67 (Yerushalmi et al. (2010) *Lancet Oncol*, 11(2):174-183), and mammaglobin (Fanger et al. (2002) *Tumour Biol*, 23(4):212-221). Only a fraction of these markers have been associated with breast cancer prognosis or ER-positive breast cancer prognosis, progression and/or metastatic capacity and as such, their potential as valuable biomarkers and/or therapeutic targets is largely unknown.

As used herein, estrogen receptor (ER), also known as ESR, ESR1, Era, ESRA, ESTRR and NR31, refers to both the gene and the protein, in both processed and unprocessed forms, unless clearly indicated otherwise by context. The NCBI gene ID for ER is 2099 and detailed information can be found at the NCBI website (incorporated herein by reference in the version available on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority). *Homo sapiens* ER is located on chromosome 6 at 6q25.1-q25.2, sequence NC_000006.12 (151654148..152129619). Human ER transcript variant 1 has accession number NM_000125.4. Human ER transcript variant 2 has accession number NM_001122740.2 (Each GenBank number is incorporated herein by reference in the version available on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority).

As used herein, progesterone receptor (PR), also known as PGR and NR3C3, refers to both the gene and the protein, in both processed and unprocessed forms, unless clearly indicated otherwise by context. The NCBI gene ID for PR is 5241 and detailed information can be found at the NCBI website (incorporated herein by reference in the version available

on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority). Homo sapiens PR is located on chromosome 11 at 11q22.1, sequence NC_000011.10 (101029624..101130681, complement). Human PR transcript variant 1 has accession number, NM_001202474.3. Human PR transcript variant 2 has accession number
 5 NM_000926.4 (Each GenBank number is incorporated herein by reference in the version available on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority).

As used herein, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), also known as ERBB2, NEU, NGL, TKR1, CD340, MLN 19 and HER-2/neu, refers to both the gene and the protein, in both processed and unprocessed forms, unless clearly indicated otherwise by
 10 context. The NCBI gene ID for HER2 is 2064 and detailed information can be found at the NCBI website (incorporated herein by reference in the version available on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority). HER2 is located on chromosome 17 at 17q12, sequence NC_000017.11 (39688094..39728660). HER2 transcript variant 1 has accession number NM_004448.4. HER2 transcript variant 2 has accession number
 15 NM_001005862.3 (Each GenBank number is incorporated herein by reference in the version available on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority).

As previously mentioned, status of ER, PR and HER2 receptors of breast cancer has clinical implications in treatment decision and outcome prediction for patients. Use of these markers for therapy indication and their prognosis values are further described in Bardou et
 20 al. (2003) J Clin Oncol, 21(10):1973-1979 and Prat et al. (2015) Breast, 24 Suppl 2:S26-S35, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific markers identified herein as breast cancer genes 1 and 2 (BRCA1 and BRCA2) are further described in Narod and Foulkes (2004) Nat Rev Cancer, 4(9):665-676), the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

25 The specific marker identified herein as CA 27-29 is further described in Rack et al. (2010) Anticancer Research, 30(5):1837-1841, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as CA 15-3 is further described in Duffy et al. Clin Chim Acta. 2010;411(23-24):1869-1874, the entire contents of which is incorporated
 30 herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as carc the entire contents of inoembryonic antigen is further described in Uehara et al. (2008) Int J Clin Oncol, 13(5):447-51, which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as tissue polypeptide specific antigen (TPS) is further described in Ahn et al. (2013) Int J Cancer, 132(4):875-881, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as p53 is further described in Duffy et al. (2018) Breast Cancer Res Treat, 170(2):213-219, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as cathepsin D is further described in Zhang et al. (2018) Cancer Lett, 438:105-115, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as cyclin E is further described in Hunt et al. (2017) Clin Cancer Res, 23(12):2991-3002, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as nestin is further described in Nowak and Dziegiel (2018) Int J Oncol, 53(2):477-487, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as ki67 is further described in Penault-Llorca and Radosevich-Robin (2017) Pathology, 49(2):166-171, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

The specific marker identified herein as mammaglobin is further described in Wang et al. (2009) Int J Clin Exp Pathol, 2(4):384-389, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

In certain embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is a protein, for example, a protein listed in Tables 1 and 2. In some embodiments, the invention also relates to a marker comprising one or more of the proteins listed in Tables 1 and 2. Exemplary Genbank Accession numbers for the protein markers listed in Tables 1 and 2 are set forth in Table 3, as follows:

Table 3.

Protein Markers	Genes	Gene ID	Gene Bank Accession Number
glutathione S-transferase theta 1(GSTT1)	GSTT1	2952	167466164
acyl-CoA synthetase short-chain family member 3(ACSS3)	ACSS3	79611	530400834
matrix Gla protein(MGP)	MGP	4256	49574514

folate receptor beta(FOLR2)	FOLR2	2350	166064050
ferredoxin reductase(FDXR)	FDXR	2232	731184198
fucosidase, alpha-L- 2, plasma(FUCA2)	FUCA2	2519	40068512
lymphocyte-specific protein 1(LSP1)	LSP1	4046	10880979
prostaglandin D2 synthase(PTGDS)	PTGDS	5730	32171249
protein kinase C beta(PRKCB)	PRKCB	5579	20127450
methyltransferase like 7A(METTL7A)	METTL7A	25840	578823554
hematopoietic cell-specific Lyn substrate 1(HCLS1)	HCLS1	3059	167234422
glutathione S-transferase zeta 1(GSTZ1)	GSTZ1	2954	22202624
high mobility group AT-hook 1(HMGA1)	HMGA1	3159	22208973
Rho GTPase activating protein 25(ARHGAP25)	ARHGAP25	9938	767915508
thiopurine S-methyltransferase(TPMT)	TPMT	7172	767940590
dedicator of cytokinesis 2(DOCK2)	DOCK2	1794	31377468
galectin 9(LGALS9)	LGALS9	3965	578830909
abhydrolase domain containing 14B(ABHD14B)	ABHD14B	84836	14249382
acyl-CoA synthetase family member 2(ACSF2)	ACSF2	80221	572879274
src kinase associated phosphoprotein 2(SKAP2)	SKAP2	8935	1034657344
ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neuronal 5(CLN5)	CLN5	1203	5729772
legumain(LGMN)	LGMN	5641	767981047
ABRA C-terminal like(ABRACL)	ABRACL	58527	1034651150
cathepsin H(CTSH)	CTSH	1512	1034589832
choline dehydrogenase(CHDH)	CHDH	55349	1034634375
aldehyde dehydrogenase 6 family member A1(ALDH6A1)	ALDH6A1	4329	11095441
cathepsin S(CTSS)	CTSS	1520	23110962
histidine triad nucleotide binding protein 2(HINT2)	HINT2	84681	14211923
carboxypeptidase D(CPD)	CPD	1362	22202611
engulfment and cell motility 1(ELMO1)	ELMO1	9844	1034657561
DEF6, guanine nucleotide exchange factor(DEF6)	DEF6	50619	145312241
mitochondrial ribosomal protein L12(MRPL12)	MRPL12	6182	27436901
isovaleryl-CoA dehydrogenase(IVD)	IVD	3712	1034590514
signal transducer and activator of transcription 5A(STAT5A)	STAT5A	6776	570359557

WW domain binding protein 2(WBP2)	WBP2	23558	24430132
threonine synthase like 1(THNSL1)	THNSL1	79896	1034569575
dynein light chain LC8-type 2(DYNLL2)	DYNLL2	140735	18087855
integrin subunit alpha 3(ITGA3)	ITGA3	3675	530412106
schlafen family member 5(SLFN5)	SLFN5	162394	145580600
dedicator of cytokinesis 8(DOCK8)	DOCK8	81704	299473744
peptidyl-tRNA hydrolase domain containing 1(PTRHD1)	PTRHD1	391356	61966781
fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase domain containing 2A(FAHD2A)	FAHD2A	51011	1034614374
pyrophosphatase (inorganic) 1(PPA1)	PPA1	5464	11056044
hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase/3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase/enoyl-CoA hydratase (trifunctional protein), beta subunit(HADHB)	HADHB	3032	4504327
glyoxalase domain containing 4(GLOD4)	GLOD4	51031	217330598
dipeptidyl peptidase 3(DPP3)	DPP3	10072	18491024
pyrophosphatase (inorganic) 2(PPA2)	PPA2	27068	29171702
5', 3'-nucleotidase, cytosolic(NT5C)	NT5C	30833	7657033
IST1, ESCRT-III associated factor(IST1)	IST1	9798	401709935
Rac/Cdc42 guanine nucleotide exchange factor 6(ARHGEF6)	ARHGEF6	9459	530422603
DEAD-box helicase 5(DDX5)	DDX5	1655	1002095800
chromosome 11 open reading frame 98(C11orf98)	C11orf98	102288414	554790405
ES1 protein homolog, mitochondrial(LOC102724023)	LOC102724023	102724023	578836294
G elongation factor mitochondrial 2(GFM2)	GFM2	84340	1034646527
cytochrome c oxidase subunit 5A(COX5A)	COX5A	9377	190885499
adenylate kinase 3(AK3)	AK3	50808	19923437
inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptor type 1(ITPR1)	ITPR1	3708	269954692
G protein subunit alpha 13(GNA13)	GNA13	10672	24111250
ATP synthase, H ⁺ transporting, mitochondrial Fo complex subunit D(ATP5H)	ATP5H	10476	5453559
GIPC PDZ domain containing family member 1(GIPC1)	GIPC1	10755	1034605775

glutamate-cysteine ligase catalytic subunit(GCLC)	GCLC	2729	4557625
valosin containing protein(VCP)	VCP	7415	6005942
N-acetyl-alpha-glucosaminidase(NAGLU)	NAGLU	4669	66346698
ATP synthase, H ⁺ transporting, mitochondrial Fo complex subunit F6(ATP5J)	ATP5J	522	18644883
hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase/3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase/enoyl-CoA hydratase (trifunctional protein), alpha subunit(HADHA)	HADHA	3030	20127408
vacuolar protein sorting 4 homolog A(VPS4A)	VPS4A	27183	7019569
UBX domain protein 1(UBXN1)	UBXN1	51035	1034574091
pitrilysin metalloproteinase 1(PITRM1)	PITRM1	10531	1034565927
chromosome X open reading frame 38(CXorf38)	CXorf38	159013	21450663
ubiquitin like domain containing CTD phosphatase 1(UBLCP1)	UBLCP1	134510	193083197
SNU13 homolog, small nuclear ribonucleoprotein (U4/U6.U5)(SNU13)	SNU13	4809	51317376
2',3'-cyclic nucleotide 3' phosphodiesterase(CNP)	CNP	1267	94721261
microtubule associated monooxygenase, calponin and LIM domain containing 1(MICAL1)	MICAL1	64780	205360947
cytochrome c oxidase subunit 6B1(COX6B1)	COX6B1	1340	4502985
EH domain containing 4(EHD4)	EHD4	30844	21264315
TANK binding kinase 1(TBK1)	TBK1	29110	530400116
NOC3 like DNA replication regulator(NOC3L)	NOC3L	64318	20806097
ATP synthase, H ⁺ transporting, mitochondrial Fo complex subunit B1(ATP5F1)	ATP5F1	515	21361565
GIT ArfGAP 1(GIT1)	GIT1	28964	41393573
metastasis associated 1 family member 2(MTA2)	MTA2	9219	14141170
ribosomal protein L22(RPL22)	RPL22	6146	4506613
mitochondrial fission factor(MFF)	MFF	56947	457866836
death domain associated protein(DAXX)	DAXX	1616	215422388
RNA binding motif protein 15(RBM15)	RBM15	64783	319996623
WD repeat domain 26(WDR26)	WDR26	80232	264681556
craniofacial development protein 1(CFDP1)	CFDP1	10428	5453567
importin 9(IPO9)	IPO9	55705	21361659
5'-nucleotidase domain containing 2(NT5DC2)	NT5DC2	64943	578806491

eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4 gamma 3(EIF4G3)	EIF4G3	8672	1034562981
tubulin folding cofactor E(TBCE)	TBCE	6905	118442828
aladin WD repeat nucleoporin(AAAS)	AAAS	8086	12962937
PHD finger protein 14(PHF14)	PHF14	9678	55769548
nascent polypeptide-associated complex alpha subunit(NACA)	NACA	4666	767974358
protein kinase C iota(PRKCI)	PRKCI	5584	133908623
ubiquitin family domain containing 1(UBFD1)	UBFD1	56061	77917604
sperm antigen with calponin homology and coiled-coil domains 1(SPECC1)	SPECC1	92521	1034602034
guanylate kinase 1(GUK1)	GUK1	2987	226874831
SHOC2, leucine rich repeat scaffold protein(SHOC2)	SHOC2	8036	1024249284
WD repeat domain 45B(WDR45B)	WDR45B	56270	122939167
NudC domain containing 3(NUDCD3)	NUDCD3	23386	122939165
phosphatidylinositol transfer protein beta(PITPNB)	PITPNB	23760	6912594
disco interacting protein 2 homolog B(DIP2B)	DIP2B	57609	1034580782
procollagen-lysine,2-oxoglutarate 5-dioxygenase 1(PLOD1)	PLOD1	5351	32307144
ribonuclease T2(RNASET2)	RNASET2	8635	5231228
AKT serine/threonine kinase 1(AKT1)	AKT1	207	530403240
ubiquitin A-52 residue ribosomal protein fusion product 1(UBA52)	UBA52	7311	1005261220
metadherin(MTDH)	MTDH	92140	223555917
SBDS ribosome assembly guanine nucleotide exchange factor(SBDS)	SBDS	51119	28416940
eukaryotic translation elongation factor 1 delta(EEF1D)	EEF1D	1936	1034659507
nuclear casein kinase and cyclin dependent kinase substrate 1(NUCKS1)	NUCKS1	64710	56118310
microtubule associated protein 4(MAP4)	MAP4	4134	1034633273
Sad1 and UNC84 domain containing 1(SUN1)	SUN1	23353	110227866
suppression of tumorigenicity 13 (colon	ST13	6767	19923193

carcinoma) (Hsp70 interacting protein)(ST13)			
PPFIA binding protein 1(PPFIBP1)	PPFIBP1	8496	312032473
purine rich element binding protein B(PURB)	PURB	5814	15147219
thyroid hormone receptor interactor 4(TRIP4)	TRIP4	9325	32189376
fibronectin type III domain containing 1(FNDC1)	FNDC1	84624	767943731
ATP binding cassette subfamily D member 3(ABCD3)	ABCD3	5825	4506341
disco interacting protein 2 homolog C(DIP2C)	DIP2C	22982	44888818
ATPase plasma membrane Ca ²⁺ transporting 4(ATP2B4)	ATP2B4	493	48255957
regulator of chromosome condensation 1(RCC1)	RCC1	1104	114796642
glypican 1(GPC1)	GPC1	2817	167001141
centromere protein B(CENPB)	CENPB	1059	21735415
tubulin tyrosine ligase like 12(TTLL12)	TTLL12	23170	11056036
branched chain ketoacid dehydrogenase kinase(BCKDK)	BCKDK	10295	429484478
nuclear VCP-like(NVL)	NVL	4931	45643123
basic leucine zipper and W2 domains 2(BZW2)	BZW2	28969	229577398
La ribonucleoprotein domain family member 4(LARP4)	LARP4	113251	1034577797
keratin 9(KRT9)	KRT9	3857	55956899
four and a half LIM domains 3(FHL3)	FHL3	2275	54112385
frizzled class receptor 1(FZD1)	FZD1	8321	4503825
phospholipid scramblase 3(PLSCR3)	PLSCR3	57048	31543417
solute carrier family 30 member 1(SLC30A1)	SLC30A1	7779	52352803
procollagen-lysine,2-oxoglutarate 5-dioxygenase 2(PLOD2)	PLOD2	5352	62739166
saccharopine dehydrogenase (putative)(SCCPDH)	SCCPDH	51097	55770836
collagen type V alpha 1 chain(COL5A1)	COL5A1	1289	89276751
chromosome 1 open reading frame 198(C1orf198)	C1orf198	84886	14249478
plastin 3(PLS3)	PLS3	5358	209862851
lipopolysaccharide binding protein(LBP)	LBP	3929	31652249
acyl-CoA thioesterase 8(ACOT8)	ACOT8	10005	34577075
LDL receptor related protein 2(LRP2)	LRP2	4036	767918153
aldolase, fructose-bisphosphate A(ALDOA)	ALDOA	226	193794814

follistatin like 1(FSTL1)	FSTL1	11167	5901956
CAP, adenylate cyclase-associated protein, 2 (yeast)(CAP2)	CAP2	10486	5453593
syndecan 2(SDC2)	SDC2	6383	767953408
programmed cell death 4 (neoplastic transformation inhibitor)(PDCD4)	PDCD4	27250	313760537
thrombospondin 1(THBS1)	THBS1	7057	40317626
calbindin 2(CALB2)	CALB2	794	153946409

Each GenBank number is incorporated herein by reference in the version available on the filing date of the application to which this application claims priority. The protein markers are not limited to the protein sequences set forth in the GenBank Accession Numbers or sequence listing.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, comprises one or more of the protein markers listed in Tables 1 and 2 that is increased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject. In some embodiments, the marker comprises one or more of proteins CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22. In one embodiment, the marker comprises one or more of proteins ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26. In other embodiments, the marker of ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, luminal B1 breast cancer) progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 wherein the one or more markers have a FC ratio greater than 1, or a logFC (or log₂(FC)) value greater than 0.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of better survival or ER-positive breast cancer non-progression, comprises a decreased level of one or more of the protein

markers listed in Tables 1 and 2 that has a logFC value greater than 0. In some embodiments, the marker of better survival or ER-positive breast cancer non-progression comprises a decreased level of one or more of proteins CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22. In some embodiments, the marker of better survival or ER-positive breast cancer non-progression comprises a decreased level of one or more of proteins ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, comprises one or more of the protein markers listed in Tables 1 and 2 that is decreased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject. In some embodiments, the marker comprises one or more of proteins GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2. In some embodiments, the marker comprises one or more of proteins ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2. In other embodiments, the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 wherein the one or more markers have a FC ratio less than 1, or a logFC (or log₂(FC)) value less than 0.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of better survival or ER-positive breast cancer non- progression, comprises an increased level of one or more of the protein markers listed in Tables 1 and 2 that has a logFC value less than 0. In some embodiments,

the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of better survival or ER-positive breast cancer non-progression, comprises an increased level of one or more of proteins GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2. In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of better survival or ER-positive breast cancer non-progression, comprises an increased level of one or more of proteins ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2.

In certain embodiments, the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is increased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject. In other embodiments, the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is decreased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

In another aspect, the present invention provides for the identification of a “prognostic signature” or “progression profile” based on the levels of the markers of the invention in a biological sample, including in a diseased tissue or directly from the serum or blood, that correlates with the presence and/or risk of progression of ER-positive breast cancer. The “levels of the markers” can refer to the level of a marker protein, metabolite, lipid or lipid subgroup in a biological sample, *e.g.*, tissue, plasma or serum. The “levels of the markers” can also refer to the expression level of the genes corresponding to the proteins, *e.g.*, by measuring the expression levels of the corresponding marker mRNAs. The collection or totality of levels of markers provide a prognostic signature that correlates with the presence and/or risk of progression of ER-positive breast cancer. The methods for obtaining a prognostic signature or progression profile of the invention are meant to encompass any measurable characteristic that reflects in a quantitative or qualitative manner the physiological state of an organism, *e.g.*, whether the organism has ER-positive breast cancer progression. The physiological state of an organism is inclusive of any disease or non-

disease state, *e.g.*, a subject having ER-positive breast cancer progression or a subject who is otherwise healthy. Said another way, the methods used for identifying a prognostic signature or progression profile of the invention include determining characteristics that can be objectively measured and evaluated as indicators of normal processes, pathogenic processes, or pharmacologic responses to a therapeutic intervention, including, in particular, progression of ER-positive breast cancer. These characteristics can be clinical parameters (*e.g.*, age, performance status), laboratory measures (*e.g.*, molecular markers, such as proteins, lipids, or metabolites), imaging-based measures, or genetic or other molecular determinants. Examples of markers include, for example, polypeptides, peptides, polypeptide fragments, proteins, antibodies, hormones, polynucleotides, RNA or RNA fragments, microRNA (miRNAs), lipids, polysaccharides, and other metabolites that are indicative and/or predictive of progression of ER-positive breast cancer.

In a particular embodiment, a ER-positive breast cancer progression profile or prognostic signature is determined on the basis of the combination of the markers in Tables 1 and 2 together with one or more additional markers of breast cancer progression. Other markers that may be used in combination with the markers in Tables 1 and 2 include any measurable characteristic that reflects in a quantitative or qualitative manner the physiological state of an organism, *e.g.*, whether the organism has ER-positive breast cancer progression. The physiological state of an organism is inclusive of any disease or non-disease state, *e.g.*, a subject having ER-positive breast cancer progression or a subject who is otherwise healthy. Said another way, the markers of the invention that may be used in combination with the markers in Tables 1 and 2 include characteristics that can be objectively measured and evaluated as indicators of normal processes, pathogenic processes, or pharmacologic responses to a therapeutic intervention, including, in particular, progression of ER-positive breast cancer. Such combination markers can be clinical parameters (*e.g.*, tumor stage, age, performance status), laboratory measures (*e.g.*, molecular markers), imaging-based measures, or genetic or other molecular determinants. Example of markers for use in combination with the markers in Tables 1 and 2 include, for example, polypeptides, peptides, polypeptide fragments, proteins, antibodies, hormones, polynucleotides, RNA or RNA fragments, microRNA (miRNAs), lipids, polysaccharides, and other metabolites that are prognostic and/or indicative and/or predictive of breast cancer progression. In certain embodiments, markers for use in combination with the markers in Tables 1 and 2 include polypeptides, peptides, polypeptide fragments, proteins, antibodies, hormones,

polynucleotides, RNA or RNA fragments, microRNA (miRNAs), lipids, polysaccharides, and other bodily metabolites which are prognostic and/or indicative and/or predictive of breast cancer progression. In other embodiments, the present invention also involves the analysis and consideration of any clinical and/or patient-related health data, for example, data
 5 obtained from an Electronic Medical Record (*e.g.*, collection of electronic health information about individual patients or populations relating to various types of data, such as, demographics, medical history, medication and allergies, immunization status, laboratory test results, radiology images, vital signs, personal statistics like age and weight, billing information, and/or any compilation of this data into a form).

10 In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least one of the markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the level of the at least one marker in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same marker from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least one marker in Tables 1 and 2 is above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least one marker in Tables 1 and 2 is above or below
 15 the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the level of the at least one marker in Tables 1 and 2.

20 In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least two markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, at least two of ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2 in a
 25 biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least two markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least two markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least two markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above or below the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer
 30 progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the levels of the at least two markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least three markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, at least three of ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least three markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least three markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least three markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the levels of the at least three markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least four markers in Tables 1 and 2, for example, at least four of ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least four markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least four markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least four markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the levels of the at least four markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least five markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least five markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least five markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least five markers

in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer

5 progression based on the levels of the at least five markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least six markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least six markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least six markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the
10 biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least six markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer
15 progression based on the levels of the at least six markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least seven markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least seven markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least seven markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in
20 the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least seven markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast
25 cancer progression based on the levels of the at least seven markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least eight markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least eight markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least eight markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in
30 the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least eight markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer

program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the levels of the at least eight markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least nine markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least nine markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least nine markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least nine markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the levels of the at least nine markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain other embodiments, the prognostic signature is obtained by (1) detecting the level of at least ten markers in Tables 1 and 2 in a biological sample, (2) comparing the levels of the at least ten markers in Tables 1 and 2 to the levels of the same markers from a control sample, and (3) determining if the at least ten markers in Tables 1 and 2 detected in the biological sample are above or below a certain threshold level. If the at least ten markers in Tables 1 and 2 are above the threshold level, then the prognostic signature is predictive or indicative of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments, the prognostic signature can be determined based on an algorithm or computer program that predicts whether the biological sample is from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the levels of the at least ten markers in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is a protein, for example, a protein listed in Tables 1 and 2. In some embodiments, the invention also relates to a marker comprising one or more of the proteins listed in Tables 1 and 2.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain embodiments, the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is increased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject. In other embodiments, the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast

cancer progression, is decreased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

In accordance with various embodiments, algorithms may be employed to predict whether or not a biological sample is likely to be diseased, *e.g.*, have ER-positive breast cancer progression. The skilled artisan will appreciate that an algorithm can be any computation, formula, statistical survey, nomogram, look-up Tables, decision tree method, or computer program which processes a set of input variables (*e.g.*, number of markers (n) which have been detected at a level exceeding some threshold level, or number of markers (n) which have been detected at a level below some threshold level) through a number of well-defined successive steps to eventually produce a score or “output,” *e.g.*, a diagnosis of breast cancer. Any suitable algorithm—whether computer-based or manual-based (*e.g.*, look-up Tables)—is contemplated herein.

In certain embodiments, an algorithm of the invention is used to predict whether a biological sample is from a subject that has progression in breast cancer by producing a score on the basis of the detected level of at least 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, or more of the markers in Tables 1 and 2 in the sample, wherein if the score is above or below a certain threshold score, then the biological sample is from a subject that is at risk for or has ER-positive breast cancer progression.

Moreover, an ER-positive breast cancer progression profile or signature may be obtained by detecting at least one of the markers in Tables 1 and 2 in combination with at least one other marker, or more preferably, with at least two other markers, or still more preferably, with at least three other markers, or even more preferably with at least four other markers. Still further, the markers in Tables 1 and 2 in certain embodiments, may be used in combination with at least five other markers, or at least six other markers, or at least seven other markers, or at least eight other markers, or at least nine other markers, or at least ten other markers, or at least eleven other markers, or at least twelve other markers, or at least thirteen other markers, or at least fourteen other markers, or at least fifteen other markers, or at least sixteen other markers, or at least seventeen other markers, or at least eighteen other markers, or at least nineteen other markers, or at least twenty other markers. Further still, the markers in Tables 1 and 2 may be used in combination with a multitude of other markers, including, for example, with between about 20-50 other markers, or between 50-100, or between 100-500, or between 500-1000, or between 1000-10,000 or markers or more.

In certain embodiments, the markers of the invention can include variant sequences. More particularly, certain binding agents/reagents used for detecting certain of the markers of the invention can bind and/or identify variants of these certain markers of the invention. As used herein, the term "variant" encompasses nucleotide or amino acid sequences different from the specifically identified sequences, wherein one or more nucleotides or amino acid residues is deleted, substituted, or added. Variants may be naturally occurring allelic variants, or non-naturally occurring variants. Variant sequences (polynucleotide or polypeptide) preferably exhibit at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identity to a sequence disclosed herein. The percentage identity is determined by aligning the two sequences to be compared as described below, determining the number of identical residues in the aligned portion, dividing that number by the total number of residues in the inventive (queried) sequence, and multiplying the result by 100.

In addition to exhibiting the recited level of sequence identity, variants of the disclosed protein markers are preferably themselves expressed in subjects with ER-positive breast cancer progression at levels that are higher or lower than the levels of expression in ER-positive breast cancer non-progressors or normal, healthy individuals.

Variant sequences generally differ from the specifically identified sequence only by conservative substitutions, deletions or modifications. As used herein, a "conservative substitution" is one in which an amino acid is substituted for another amino acid that has similar properties, such that one skilled in the art of peptide chemistry would expect the secondary structure and hydrophobic nature of the polypeptide to be substantially unchanged. In general, the following groups of amino acids represent conservative changes: (1) ala, pro, gly, glu, asp, gln, asn, ser, thr; (2) cys, ser, tyr, thr; (3) val, ile, leu, met, ala, phe; (4) lys, arg, his; and (5) phe, tyr, trp, his. Variants may also, or alternatively, contain other modifications, including the deletion or addition of amino acids that have minimal influence on the antigenic properties, secondary structure and hydrophobic nature of the polypeptide. For example, a polypeptide may be conjugated to a signal (or leader) sequence at the N-terminal end of the protein which co-translationally or post-translationally directs transfer of the protein. The polypeptide may also be conjugated to a linker or other sequence for ease of synthesis, purification or identification of the polypeptide (*e.g.*, poly-His), or to enhance binding of the polypeptide to a solid support. For example, a polypeptide may be conjugated to an immunoglobulin Fc region.

Polypeptide and polynucleotide sequences may be aligned, and percentages of identical amino acids or nucleotides in a specified region may be determined against another polypeptide or polynucleotide sequence, using computer algorithms that are publicly available. The percentage identity of a polynucleotide or polypeptide sequence is determined by aligning polynucleotide and polypeptide sequences using appropriate algorithms, such as BLASTN or BLASTP, respectively, set to default parameters; identifying the number of identical nucleic or amino acids over the aligned portions; dividing the number of identical nucleic or amino acids by the total number of nucleic or amino acids of the polynucleotide or polypeptide of the present invention; and then multiplying by 100 to determine the percentage identity.

Two exemplary algorithms for aligning and identifying the identity of polynucleotide sequences are the BLASTN and FASTA algorithms. The alignment and identity of polypeptide sequences may be examined using the BLASTP algorithm. BLASTX and FASTX algorithms compare nucleotide query sequences translated in all reading frames against polypeptide sequences. The FASTA and FASTX algorithms are described in Pearson and Lipman, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 85:2444-2448, 1988; and in Pearson, Methods in Enzymol. 183:63-98, 1990. The FASTA software package is available from the University of Virginia, Charlottesville, Va. 22906-9025. The FASTA algorithm, set to the default parameters described in the documentation and distributed with the algorithm, may be used in the determination of polynucleotide variants. The readme files for FASTA and FASTX Version 2.0x that are distributed with the algorithms describe the use of the algorithms and describe the default parameters.

The BLASTN software is available on the NCBI anonymous FTP server and is available from the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI), National Library of Medicine, Building 38A, Room 8N805, Bethesda, Md. 20894. The BLASTN algorithm Version 2.0.6 [Sep. 10, 1998] and Version 2.0.11 [Jan. 20, 2000] set to the default parameters described in the documentation and distributed with the algorithm, is preferred for use in the determination of variants according to the present invention. The use of the BLAST family of algorithms, including BLASTN, is described at NCBI's website and in the publication of Altschul, et al., "Gapped BLAST and PSI-BLAST: a new generation of protein database search programs," Nucleic Acids Res. 25:3389-3402, 1997.

In an alternative embodiment, variant polypeptides are encoded by polynucleotide sequences that hybridize to a disclosed polynucleotide under stringent conditions. Stringent

hybridization conditions for determining complementarity include salt conditions of less than about 1 M, more usually less than about 500 mM, and preferably less than about 200 mM. Hybridization temperatures can be as low as 5°C, but are generally greater than about 22°C, more preferably greater than about 30°C, and most preferably greater than about 37°C.

- 5 Longer DNA fragments may require higher hybridization temperatures for specific hybridization. Since the stringency of hybridization may be affected by other factors such as probe composition, presence of organic solvents and extent of base mismatching, the combination of parameters is more important than the absolute measure of any one alone. An example of "stringent conditions" is prewashing in a solution of 6XSSC, 0.2% SDS; hybridizing at 65°C, 6XSSC, 0.2% SDS overnight; followed by two washes of 30 minutes each in 1XSSC, 0.1% SDS at 65°C and two washes of 30 minutes each in 0.2XSSC, 0.1% SDS at 65°C.

The invention provides for the use of various combinations and sub-combinations of markers. It is understood that any single marker or combination of the markers provided herein can be used in the invention unless clearly indicated otherwise.

D. TISSUE SAMPLES

The present invention may be practiced with any suitable biological sample that potentially contains, expresses, includes, a detectable disease biomarker, *e.g.*, a lipid biomarker, a polypeptide biomarker, a nucleic acid biomarker, a mRNA biomarker, a microRNA biomarker. For example, the biological sample may be obtained from sources that include whole blood, serum, urine, diseased and/or healthy organ tissue, for example, biopsy of breast, and seminal fluid. In certain embodiments, the biological sample is a breast tissue sample or a breast cancer tumor sample. Preferably, the biological sample is a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from a tumor biopsy or from resection of a breast tumor. In some other embodiments, the biological samples are circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumors cells, *e.g.*, in bone marrow and/or exosomes. In some embodiments, the biological sample comprises a breast ductal fluid exudent, *e.g.*, a fluid collected from the milk ducts.

The methods of the invention may be applied to the study of any breast tissue sample, *i.e.*, a sample of breast tissue or fluid, as well as cells (or their progeny) isolated from such tissue or fluid. In another embodiment, the present invention may be practiced with any suitable breast tissue samples which are freshly isolated or which have been frozen or stored after having been collected from a subject, or archival tissue samples, for example, with known diagnosis, treatment, and/or outcome history. Breast tissue may be collected by any

non-invasive means, such as, for example, fine needle aspiration and needle biopsy, or alternatively, by an invasive method, including, for example, surgical biopsy.

The inventive methods may be performed at the single cell level (*e.g.*, isolation and testing of cancerous cells from the breast tissue sample). However, the inventive methods may also be performed using a sample comprising many cells, where the assay is "averaging" expression over the entire collection of cells and tissue present in the sample. Preferably, there is enough of the breast tissue sample to accurately and reliably determine the expression levels of interest. In certain embodiments, multiple samples may be taken from the same breast tissue in order to obtain a representative sampling of the tissue. In addition, sufficient biological material can be obtained in order to perform duplicate, triplicate or further rounds of testing.

Any commercial device or system for isolating and/or obtaining breast tissue and/or blood or other biological products, and/or for processing said materials prior to conducting a detection reaction is contemplated.

In certain embodiments, the present invention relates to detecting biomarker nucleic acid molecules (*e.g.*, mRNA encoding the protein markers of Tables 1 and 2). In such embodiments, RNA can be extracted from a biological sample, *e.g.*, a breast tissue sample, before analysis. Methods of RNA extraction are well known in the art (see, for example, J. Sambrook et al., "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual", 1989, 2nd Ed., Cold Spring Harbour Laboratory Press: New York). Most methods of RNA isolation from bodily fluids or tissues are based on the disruption of the tissue in the presence of protein denaturants to quickly and effectively inactivate RNases. Generally, RNA isolation reagents comprise, among other components, guanidinium thiocyanate and/or beta-mercaptoethanol, which are known to act as RNase inhibitors. Isolated total RNA is then further purified from the protein contaminants and concentrated by selective ethanol precipitations, phenol/chloroform extractions followed by isopropanol precipitation (see, for example, P. Chomczynski and N. Sacchi, *Anal. Biochem.*, 1987, 162: 156-159) or cesium chloride, lithium chloride or cesium trifluoroacetate gradient centrifugations.

Numerous different and versatile kits can be used to extract RNA (*i.e.*, total RNA or mRNA) from bodily fluids or tissues (*e.g.*, breast tissue samples) and are commercially available from, for example, Ambion, Inc. (Austin, Tex.), Amersham Biosciences (Piscataway, N.J.), BD Biosciences Clontech (Palo Alto, Calif.), BioRad Laboratories (Hercules, Calif.), GIBCO BRL (Gaithersburg, Md.), and Qiagen, Inc. (Valencia, Calif.).

User Guides that describe in great detail the protocol to be followed are usually included in all these kits. Sensitivity, processing time and cost may be different from one kit to another. One of ordinary skill in the art can easily select the kit(s) most appropriate for a particular situation.

5 In certain embodiments, after extraction, mRNA is amplified, and transcribed into cDNA, which can then serve as template for multiple rounds of transcription by the appropriate RNA polymerase. Amplification methods are well known in the art (see, for example, A. R. Kimmel and S. L. Berger, *Methods Enzymol.* 1987, 152: 307-316; J. Sambrook et al., "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual", 1989, 2nd Ed., Cold Spring Harbour Laboratory Press: New York; "Short Protocols in Molecular Biology", F. M. Ausubel (Ed.), 2002, 5^{sup}.th Ed., John Wiley & Sons; U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,683,195; 4,683,202 and 4,800,159). Reverse transcription reactions may be carried out using non-specific primers, such as an anchored oligo-dT primer, or random sequence primers, or using a target-specific primer complementary to the RNA for each genetic probe being monitored, or using 10 thermostable DNA polymerases (such as avian myeloblastosis virus reverse transcriptase or Moloney murine leukemia virus reverse transcriptase).

 In certain embodiments, the RNA isolated from the breast tissue sample (for example, after amplification and/or conversion to cDNA or cRNA) is labeled with a detectable agent before being analyzed. The role of a detectable agent is to facilitate detection of RNA or to 20 allow visualization of hybridized nucleic acid fragments (*e.g.*, nucleic acid fragments hybridized to genetic probes in an array-based assay). Preferably, the detectable agent is selected such that it generates a signal which can be measured and whose intensity is related to the amount of labeled nucleic acids present in the sample being analyzed. In array-based analysis methods, the detectable agent is also preferably selected such that it generates a 25 localized signal, thereby allowing spatial resolution of the signal from each spot on the array.

 Methods for labeling nucleic acid molecules are well-known in the art. For a review of labeling protocols, label detection techniques and recent developments in the field, see, for example, L. J. Kricka, *Ann. Clin. Biochem.* 2002, 39: 114-129; R. P. van Gijlswijk et al., *Expert Rev. Mol. Diagn.* 2001, 1: 81-91; and S. Joos et al., *J. Biotechnol.* 1994, 35: 135-153. 30 Standard nucleic acid labeling methods include: incorporation of radioactive agents, direct attachment of fluorescent dyes (see, for example, L. M. Smith et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.* 1985, 13: 2399-2412) or of enzymes (see, for example, B. A. Connolly and P. Rider, *Nucl. Acids. Res.* 1985, 13: 4485-4502); chemical modifications of nucleic acid fragments making them

detectable immunochemically or by other affinity reactions (see, for example, T. R. Broker et al., Nucl. Acids Res. 1978, 5: 363-384; E. A. Bayer et al., Methods of Biochem. Analysis, 1980, 26: 1-45; R. Langer et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1981, 78: 6633-6637; R. W. Richardson et al., Nucl. Acids Res. 1983, 11: 6167-6184; D. J. Brigati et al., Virol. 1983, 126: 32-50; P. Tchen et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1984, 81: 3466-3470; J. E. Landegent et al., Exp. Cell Res. 1984, 15: 61-72; and A. H. Hopman et al., Exp. Cell Res. 1987, 169: 357-368); and enzyme-mediated labeling methods, such as random priming, nick translation, PCR and tailing with terminal transferase (for a review on enzymatic labeling, see, for example, J. Tamsamani and S. Agrawal, Mol. Biotechnol. 1996, 5: 223-232).

Any of a wide variety of detectable agents can be used in the practice of the present invention. Suitable detectable agents include, but are not limited to: various ligands, radionuclides, fluorescent dyes, chemiluminescent agents, microparticles (such as, for example, quantum dots, nanocrystals, phosphors and the like), enzymes (such as, for example, those used in an ELISA, *i.e.*, horseradish peroxidase, beta-galactosidase, luciferase, alkaline phosphatase), colorimetric labels, magnetic labels, and biotin, dioxigenin or other haptens and proteins for which antisera or monoclonal antibodies are available.

However, in some embodiments, the expression levels are determined by detecting the expression of a gene product (*e.g.*, protein) thereby eliminating the need to obtain a genetic sample (*e.g.*, RNA) from the breast tissue sample.

In still other embodiments, the present invention relates to preparing a prediction model for ER-positive breast cancer progression and/or the likelihood of ER-positive breast cancer progression by preparing a model for ER-positive breast cancer progression based on measuring the biomarkers of the invention in known control samples. More particularly, the present invention relates in some embodiments to preparing a predictive model by evaluating the biomarkers of the invention, *i.e.*, the markers of Tables 1 and 2.

The skilled person will appreciate that patient tissue samples containing breast cells or breast cancer cells may be used in the methods of the present invention including, but not limited to those aimed at predicting relapse probability. In these embodiments, the level of expression of the signature gene can be assessed by assessing the amount, *e.g.* absolute amount or concentration, of a signature gene product, *e.g.*, protein and RNA transcript encoded by the signature gene and fragments of the protein and RNA transcript) in a sample, *e.g.*, stool and/or blood obtained from a patient. The sample can, of course, be subjected to a variety of well-known post-collection preparative and storage techniques (*e.g.* fixation,

storage, freezing, lysis, homogenization, DNA or RNA extraction, ultrafiltration, concentration, evaporation, centrifugation, etc.) prior to assessing the amount of the signature gene product in the sample.

The invention further relates to the preparation of a model for ER-positive breast cancer progression by evaluating the biomarkers of the invention in known samples of ER-positive breast cancer progression. More particularly, the present invention relates to a model for pronosing and/or monitoring ER-positive breast cancer progression using the biomarkers of the invention, *i.e.*, the markers of Tables 1 and 2.

In the methods of the invention aimed at preparing a model for ER-positive breast cancer progression prediction, it is understood that the particular clinical outcome associated with each sample contributing to the model preferably should be known. Consequently, the model can be established using archived tissue samples. In the methods of the invention aimed at preparing a model for ER-positive breast cancer progression prediction, total RNA can be generally extracted from the source material of interest, generally an archived tissue such as a formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue, and subsequently purified. Methods for obtaining robust and reproducible gene expression patterns from archived tissues, including formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissues are taught in U.S. Publ. No. 2004/0259105, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Commercial kits and protocols for RNA extraction from FFPE tissues are available including, for example, ROCHE High Pure RNA Paraffin Kit (Roche) MasterPure™ Complete DNA and RNA Purification Kit (EPICENTRE®Madison, Wis.); Paraffin Block RNA Isolation Kit (Ambion, Inc.) and RNeasy™ Mini kit (Qiagen, Chatsworth, Calif.).

The use of FFPE tissues as a source of RNA for RT-PCR has been described previously (Stanta et al., Biotechniques 11:304-308 (1991); Stanta et al., Methods Mol. Biol. 86:23-26 (1998); Jackson et al., Lancet 1:1391 (1989); Jackson et al., J. Clin. Pathol. 43:499-504 (1999); Finke et al., Biotechniques 14:448-453 (1993); Goldsworthy et al., Mol. Carcinog. 25:86-91 (1999); Stanta and Bonin, Biotechniques 24:271-276 (1998); Godfrey et al., J. Mol. Diagnostics 2:84 (2000); Specht et al., J. Mol. Med. 78:B27 (2000); Specht et al., Am. J. Pathol. 158:419-429 (2001)). For quick analysis of the RNA quality, RT-PCR can be performed utilizing a pair of primers targeting a short fragment in a highly expressed gene, for example, actin, ubiquitin, gapdh or other well-described commonly used housekeeping gene. If the cDNA synthesized from the RNA sample can be amplified using this pair of primers, then the sample is suitable for the a quantitative measurements of RNA target

sequences by any method preferred, for example, the DASL assay, which requires only a short cDNA fragment for the annealing of query oligonucleotides.

There are numerous tissue banks and collections including exhaustive samples from all stages of a wide variety of disease states, most notably cancer and in particular, breast cancer. The ability to perform genotyping and/or gene expression analysis, including both qualitative and quantitative analysis on these samples enables the application of this methodology to the methods of the invention. In particular, the ability to establish a correlation of gene expression and a known predictor of disease extent and/or outcome by probing the genetic state of tissue samples for which clinical outcome is already known, allows for the establishment of a correlation between a particular molecular signature and the known predictor, such as estrogen or progesterone receptor status, to derive a score that allows for a more sensitive prognosis than that based on the known predictor alone. The skilled person will appreciate that by building databases of molecular signatures from tissue samples of known outcomes, many such correlations can be established, thus allowing both diagnosis and prognosis of any condition. Thus, such approaches may be used to correlate the expression levels of the biomarkers of the invention, *i.e.*, the markers of Tables 1 and 2.

Tissue samples useful for preparing a model for ER-positive breast cancer progression in breast cancer prediction include, for example, paraffin and polymer embedded samples, ethanol embedded samples and/or formalin and formaldehyde embedded tissues, although any suitable sample may be used. In general, nucleic acids isolated from archived samples can be highly degraded and the quality of nucleic preparation can depend on several factors, including the sample shelf life, fixation technique and isolation method. However, using the methodologies taught in U.S. Publ. No. 2004/0259105, which have the significant advantage that short or degraded targets can be used for analysis as long as the sequence is long enough to hybridize with the oligonucleotide probes, highly reproducible results can be obtained that closely mimic results found in fresh samples.

Archived tissue samples, which can be used for all methods of the invention, typically have been obtained from a source and preserved. Preferred methods of preservation include, but are not limited to paraffin embedding, ethanol fixation and formalin, including formaldehyde and other derivatives, fixation as are known in the art. A tissue sample may be temporally "old", *e.g.* months or years old, or recently fixed. For example, post-surgical procedures generally include a fixation step on excised tissue for histological analysis. In a preferred embodiment, the tissue sample is a diseased tissue sample, particularly a breast

cancer tissue, including primary and secondary tumor tissues as well as lymph node tissue and metastatic tissue.

Thus, an archived sample can be heterogeneous and encompass more than one cell or tissue type, for example, tumor and non-tumor tissue. Similarly, depending on the condition, suitable tissue samples include, but are not limited to, bodily fluids (including, but not limited to, blood, urine, serum, lymph, saliva, anal and vaginal secretions, perspiration and semen, of virtually any organism, with mammalian samples being preferred and human samples being particularly preferred). In embodiments directed to methods of establishing a model for ER-positive breast cancer progression prediction, the tissue sample is one for which patient history and outcome is known. Generally, the invention methods can be practiced with the signature gene sequence contained in an archived sample or can be practiced with signature gene sequences that have been physically separated from the sample prior to performing a method of the invention.

E. DETECTION AND/OR MEASUREMENT OF BIOMARKERS

The present invention contemplates any suitable means, techniques, and/or procedures for detecting and/or measuring the biomarkers of the invention. The skilled artisan will appreciate that the methodologies employed to measure the biomarkers of the invention will depend at least on the type of biomarker being detected or measured (*e.g.*, lipid or polypeptide biomarker) and the source of the biological sample (*e.g.*, whole blood versus breast biopsy tissue). Certain biological samples may also require certain specialized treatments prior to measuring the biomarkers of the invention.

1. DETECTION OF PROTEIN MARKERS

The present invention contemplates any suitable method for detecting polypeptide biomarkers of the invention, *i.e.*, the proteins of Tables 1 and 2. In certain embodiments, the detection method is an immunodetection method involving an antibody that specifically binds to one or more of the proteins of Tables 1 and 2. The steps of various useful immunodetection methods have been described in the scientific literature, such as, *e.g.*, Nakamura et al. (1987), which is incorporated herein by reference.

In general, the immunobinding methods include obtaining a sample suspected of containing a biomarker protein, peptide or antibody, and contacting the sample with an antibody or protein or peptide in accordance with the present invention, as the case may be, under conditions effective to allow the formation of immunocomplexes.

The immunobinding methods include methods for detecting or quantifying the amount of a reactive component in a sample, which methods require the detection or quantitation of any immune complexes formed during the binding process. Here, one would obtain a sample suspected of containing a breast specific protein, peptide or a corresponding antibody, and contact the sample with an antibody or encoded protein or peptide, as the case may be, and then detect or quantify the amount of immune complexes formed under the specific conditions.

In terms of biomarker detection, the biological sample analyzed may be any sample that is suspected of containing one more proteins of Tables 1 and 2. The biological sample may be, for example, a breast or lymph node tissue section or specimen, a homogenized tissue extract, an isolated cell, a cell membrane preparation, separated or purified forms of any of the above protein-containing compositions, or even any biological fluid that comes into contact with breast tissues, including blood or lymphatic fluid.

Contacting the chosen biological sample with the protein under conditions effective and for a period of time sufficient to allow the formation of immune complexes (primary immune complexes). Generally, complex formation is a matter of simply adding the composition to the biological sample and incubating the mixture for a period of time long enough for the antibodies to form immune complexes with, *i.e.*, to bind to, any antigens present. After this time, the sample-antibody composition, such as a tissue section, ELISA plate, dot blot or Western blot, will generally be washed to remove any non-specifically bound antibody species, allowing only those antibodies specifically bound within the primary immune complexes to be detected.

In general, the detection of immunocomplex formation is well known in the art and may be achieved through the application of numerous approaches. These methods are generally based upon the detection of a label or marker, such as any radioactive, fluorescent, biological or enzymatic tags or labels of standard use in the art. U.S. patents concerning the use of such labels include U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,817,837; 3,850,752; 3,939,350; 3,996,345; 4,277,437; 4,275,149 and 4,366,241, each incorporated herein by reference. Of course, one may find additional advantages through the use of a secondary binding ligand such as a second antibody or a biotin/avidin ligand binding arrangement, as is known in the art.

The protein employed in the detection may itself be linked to a detectable label, wherein one would then simply detect this label, thereby allowing the amount of the primary immune complexes in the composition to be determined.

Alternatively, the first added component that becomes bound within the primary immune complexes may be detected by means of a second binding ligand that has binding affinity for the encoded protein, peptide or corresponding antibody. In these cases, the second binding ligand may be linked to a detectable label. The second binding ligand is itself often an antibody, which may thus be termed a "secondary" antibody. The primary immune complexes are contacted with the labeled, secondary binding ligand, or antibody, under conditions effective and for a period of time sufficient to allow the formation of secondary immune complexes. The secondary immune complexes are then generally washed to remove any non-specifically bound labeled secondary antibodies or ligands, and the remaining label in the secondary immune complexes is then detected.

Further methods include the detection of primary immune complexes by a two step approach. A second binding ligand, such as an antibody, that has binding affinity for the encoded protein, peptide or corresponding antibody is used to form secondary immune complexes, as described above. After washing, the secondary immune complexes are contacted with a third binding ligand or antibody that has binding affinity for the second antibody, again under conditions effective and for a period of time sufficient to allow the formation of immune complexes (tertiary immune complexes). The third ligand or antibody is linked to a detectable label, allowing detection of the tertiary immune complexes thus formed. This system may provide for signal amplification if this is desired.

The immunodetection methods of the present invention have evident utility in the prognosis of conditions such as ER-positive breast cancer progression. Here, a biological or clinical sample suspected of containing either the encoded protein or peptide or corresponding antibody is used. However, these embodiments also have applications to non-clinical samples, such as in the titrating of antigen or antibody samples, in the selection of hybridomas, and the like.

The present invention, in particular, contemplates the use of ELISAs as a type of immunodetection assay. It is contemplated that the biomarker proteins or peptides of the invention will find utility as immunogens in ELISA assays in prognostic and monitoring of ER-positive breast cancer progression. Immunoassays, in their most simple and direct sense, are binding assays. Certain preferred immunoassays are the various types of enzyme linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) and radioimmunoassays (RIA) known in the art. Immunohistochemical detection using tissue sections is also particularly useful. However, it

will be readily appreciated that detection is not limited to such techniques, and Western blotting, dot blotting, FACS analyses, and the like also may be used.

In one exemplary ELISA, antibodies binding to the biomarkers of the invention are immobilized onto a selected surface exhibiting protein affinity, such as a well in a

5 polystyrene microtiter plate. Then, a test composition suspected of containing the marker antigen, such as a clinical sample, is added to the wells. After binding and washing to remove non-specifically bound immune complexes, the bound antigen may be detected. Detection is generally achieved by the addition of a second antibody specific for the target protein, that is linked to a detectable label. This type of ELISA is a simple "sandwich ELISA." Detection
10 also may be achieved by the addition of a second antibody, followed by the addition of a third antibody that has binding affinity for the second antibody, with the third antibody being linked to a detectable label.

In another exemplary ELISA, the samples suspected of containing the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression antigen are immobilized onto the well surface and then
15 contacted with the anti-biomarker antibodies of the invention. After binding and washing to remove non-specifically bound immune complexes, the bound antigen is detected. Where the initial antibodies are linked to a detectable label, the immune complexes may be detected directly. Again, the immune complexes may be detected using a second antibody that has binding affinity for the first antibody, with the second antibody being linked to a detectable
20 label.

Irrespective of the format employed, ELISAs have certain features in common, such as coating, incubating or binding, washing to remove non-specifically bound species, and detecting the bound immune complexes. These are described as follows.

In coating a plate with either antigen or antibody, one will generally incubate the
25 wells of the plate with a solution of the antigen or antibody, either overnight or for a specified period of hours. The wells of the plate will then be washed to remove incompletely adsorbed material. Any remaining available surfaces of the wells are then "coated" with a nonspecific protein that is antigenically neutral with regard to the test antisera. These include bovine serum albumin (BSA), casein and solutions of milk powder. The coating allows for blocking
30 of nonspecific adsorption sites on the immobilizing surface and thus reduces the background caused by nonspecific binding of antisera onto the surface.

In ELISAs, it is probably more customary to use a secondary or tertiary detection means rather than a direct procedure. Thus, after binding of a protein or antibody to the well,

coating with a non-reactive material to reduce background, and washing to remove unbound material, the immobilizing surface is contacted with the control human breast, cancer and/or clinical or biological sample to be tested under conditions effective to allow immunocomplex (antigen/antibody) formation. Detection of the immunocomplex then requires a labeled
5 secondary binding ligand or antibody, or a secondary binding ligand or antibody in conjunction with a labeled tertiary antibody or third binding ligand.

The phrase "under conditions effective to allow immunocomplex (antigen/antibody) formation" means that the conditions preferably include diluting the antigens and antibodies with solutions such as BSA, bovine gamma globulin (BGG) and phosphate buffered saline
10 (PBS)/Tween. These added agents also tend to assist in the reduction of nonspecific background.

The "suitable" conditions also mean that the incubation is at a temperature and for a period of time sufficient to allow effective binding. Incubation steps are typically from about 1 to 2 to 4 h, at temperatures preferably on the order of 25 to 27°C, or may be overnight at
15 about 4°C or so.

Following all incubation steps in an ELISA, the contacted surface is washed so as to remove non-complexed material. A preferred washing procedure includes washing with a solution such as PBS/Tween, or borate buffer. Following the formation of specific immunocomplexes between the test sample and the originally bound material, and subsequent
20 washing, the occurrence of even minute amounts of immunocomplexes may be determined.

To provide a detecting means, the second or third antibody will have an associated label to allow detection. Preferably, this will be an enzyme that will generate color development upon incubating with an appropriate chromogenic substrate. Thus, for example, one will desire to contact and incubate the first or second immunocomplex with a urcase,
25 glucose oxidase, alkaline phosphatase or hydrogen peroxidase-conjugated antibody for a period of time and under conditions that favor the development of further immunocomplex formation (*e.g.*, incubation for 2 h at room temperature in a PBS-containing solution such as PBS-Tween).

After incubation with the labeled antibody, and subsequent to washing to remove
30 unbound material, the amount of label is quantified, *e.g.*, by incubation with a chromogenic substrate such as urea and bromocresol purple. Quantitation is then achieved by measuring the degree of color generation, *e.g.*, using a visible spectra spectrophotometer.

The protein biomarkers of the invention can also be measured, quantitated, detected, and otherwise analyzed using protein mass spectrometry methods and instrumentation.

Protein mass spectrometry refers to the application of mass spectrometry to the study of proteins. Although not intending to be limiting, two approaches are typically used for

5 characterizing proteins using mass spectrometry. In the first, intact proteins are ionized and then introduced to a mass analyzer. This approach is referred to as "top-down" strategy of protein analysis. The two primary methods for ionization of whole proteins are electrospray ionization (ESI) and matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI). In the second approach, proteins are enzymatically digested into smaller peptides using a protease such as

10 trypsin. Subsequently these peptides are introduced into the mass spectrometer and identified by peptide mass fingerprinting or tandem mass spectrometry. Hence, this latter approach (also called "bottom-up" proteomics) uses identification at the peptide level to infer the existence of proteins.

Whole protein mass analysis of the biomarkers of the invention can be conducted

15 using time-of-flight (TOF) MS, or Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance (FT-ICR). These two types of instruments are useful because of their wide mass range, and in the case of FT-ICR, its high mass accuracy. The most widely used instruments for peptide mass analysis are the MALDI time-of-flight instruments as they permit the acquisition of peptide mass fingerprints (PMFs) at high pace (1 PMF can be analyzed in approx. 10 sec). Multiple

20 stage quadrupole-time-of-flight and the quadrupole ion trap also find use in this application.

The protein biomarkers of the invention can also be measured in complex mixtures of proteins and molecules that co-exist in a biological medium or sample, however, fractionation of the sample may be required and is contemplated herein. It will be appreciated that ionization of complex mixtures of proteins can result in situation where the more abundant

25 proteins have a tendency to "drown" or suppress signals from less abundant proteins in the same sample. In addition, the mass spectrum from a complex mixture can be difficult to interpret because of the overwhelming number of mixture components. Fractionation can be used to first separate any complex mixture of proteins prior to mass spectrometry analysis. Two methods are widely used to fractionate proteins, or their peptide products from an

30 enzymatic digestion. The first method fractionates whole proteins and is called two-dimensional gel electrophoresis. The second method, high performance liquid chromatography (LC or HPLC) is used to fractionate peptides after enzymatic digestion. In

some situations, it may be desirable to combine both of these techniques. Any other suitable methods known in the art for fractionating protein mixtures are also contemplated herein.

Gel spots identified on a 2D Gel are usually attributable to one protein. If the identity of the protein is desired, usually the method of in-gel digestion is applied, where the protein spot of interest is excised, and digested proteolytically. The peptide masses resulting from the digestion can be determined by mass spectrometry using peptide mass fingerprinting. If this information does not allow unequivocal identification of the protein, its peptides can be subject to tandem mass spectrometry for de novo sequencing.

Characterization of protein mixtures using HPLC/MS may also be referred to in the art as “shotgun proteomics” and MuDPIT (Multi-Dimensional Protein Identification Technology). A peptide mixture that results from digestion of a protein mixture is fractionated by one or two steps of liquid chromatography (LC). The eluent from the chromatography stage can be either directly introduced to the mass spectrometer through electrospray ionization, or laid down on a series of small spots for later mass analysis using MALDI.

The protein biomarkers of the present invention can be identified using MS using a variety of techniques, all of which are contemplated herein. Peptide mass fingerprinting uses the masses of proteolytic peptides as input to a search of a database of predicted masses that would arise from digestion of a list of known proteins. If a protein sequence in the reference list gives rise to a significant number of predicted masses that match the experimental values, there is some evidence that this protein was present in the original sample. It will be further appreciated that the development of methods and instrumentation for automated, data-dependent electrospray ionization (ESI) tandem mass spectrometry (MS/MS) in conjunction with microcapillary liquid chromatography (LC) and database searching has significantly increased the sensitivity and speed of the identification of gel-separated proteins. Microcapillary LC-MS/MS has been used successfully for the large-scale identification of individual proteins directly from mixtures without gel electrophoretic separation (Link et al., 1999; Opitke et al., 1997).

Several recent methods allow for the quantitation of proteins by mass spectrometry. For example, stable (*e.g.*, non-radioactive) heavier isotopes of carbon (^{13}C) or nitrogen (^{15}N) can be incorporated into one sample while the other one can be labeled with corresponding light isotopes (*e.g.* ^{12}C and ^{14}N). The two samples are mixed before the analysis. Peptides derived from the different samples can be distinguished due to their mass difference. The

ratio of their peak intensities corresponds to the relative abundance ratio of the peptides (and proteins). The most popular methods for isotope labeling are SILAC (stable isotope labeling by amino acids in cell culture), trypsin-catalyzed ^{18}O labeling, ICAT (isotope coded affinity tagging), iTRAQ (isobaric tags for relative and absolute quantitation). "Semi-quantitative" mass spectrometry can be performed without labeling of samples. Typically, this is done with MALDI analysis (in linear mode). The peak intensity, or the peak area, from individual molecules (typically proteins) is here correlated to the amount of protein in the sample. However, the individual signal depends on the primary structure of the protein, on the complexity of the sample, and on the settings of the instrument. Other types of "label-free" quantitative mass spectrometry, uses the spectral counts (or peptide counts) of digested proteins as a means for determining relative protein amounts.

In one embodiment, any one or more of the protein markers of the invention can be identified and quantified from a complex biological sample using mass spectroscopy in accordance with the following exemplary method, which is not intended to limit the invention or the use of other mass spectrometry-based methods.

In the first step of this embodiment, (A) a biological sample, *e.g.*, a biological sample from a subject having ER-positive breast cancer, which comprises a complex mixture of protein (including at least one biomarker of interest) is fragmented and labeled with a stable isotope X. (B) Next, a known amount of an internal standard is added to the biological sample, wherein the internal standard is prepared by fragmenting a standard protein that is identical to the at least one target biomarker of interest, and labeled with a stable isotope Y. (C) This sample obtained is then introduced in an LC-MS/MS device, and multiple reaction monitoring (MRM) analysis is performed using MRM transitions selected for the internal standard to obtain an MRM chromatogram. (D) The MRM chromatogram is then viewed to identify a target peptide biomarker derived from the biological sample that shows the same retention time as a peptide derived from the internal standard (an internal standard peptide), and quantifying the target protein biomarker in the test sample by comparing the peak area of the internal standard peptide with the peak area of the target peptide biomarker.

Any suitable biological sample may be used as a starting point for LC-MS/MS/MRM analysis, including biological samples derived blood, urine, saliva, hair, cells, cell tissues, biopsy materials, and treated products thereof; and protein-containing samples prepared by gene recombination techniques.

Each of the above steps (A) to (D) is described further below.

Step (A) (Fragmentation and Labeling). In step (A), the target protein biomarker is fragmented to a collection of peptides, which is subsequently labeled with a stable isotope X. To fragment the target protein, for example, methods of digesting the target protein with a proteolytic enzyme (protease) such as trypsin, and chemical cleavage methods, such as a method using cyanogen bromide, can be used. Digestion by protease is preferable. It is known that a given mole quantity of protein produces the same mole quantity for each tryptic peptide cleavage product if the proteolytic digest is allowed to proceed to completion. Thus, determining the mole quantity of tryptic peptide to a given protein allows determination of the mole quantity of the original protein in the sample. Absolute quantification of the target protein can be accomplished by determining the absolute amount of the target protein-derived peptides contained in the protease digestion (collection of peptides). Accordingly, in order to allow the proteolytic digest to proceed to completion, reduction and alkylation treatments are preferably performed before protease digestion with trypsin to reduce and alkylate the disulfide bonds contained in the target protein.

Subsequently, the obtained digest (collection of peptides, comprising peptides of the target biomarker in the biological sample) is subjected to labeling with a stable isotope X. Examples of stable isotopes X include ^1H and ^2H for hydrogen atoms, ^{12}C and ^{13}C for carbon atoms, and ^{14}N and ^{15}N for nitrogen atoms. Any isotope can be suitably selected therefrom. Labeling by a stable isotope X can be performed by reacting the digest (collection of peptides) with a reagent containing the stable isotope. Preferable examples of such reagents that are commercially available include mTRAQ (registered trademark) (produced by Applied Biosystems), which is an amine-specific stable isotope reagent kit. mTRAQ is composed of 2 or 3 types of reagents (mTRAQ-light and mTRAQ-heavy; or mTRAQ-D0, mTRAQ-D4, and mTRAQ-D8) that have a constant mass difference therebetween as a result of isotope-labeling, and that are bound to the N-terminus of a peptide or the primary amine of a lysine residue.

Step (B) (Addition of the Internal Standard). In step (B), a known amount of an internal standard is added to the sample obtained in step (A). The internal standard used herein is a digest (collection of peptides) obtained by fragmenting a protein (standard protein) consisting of the same amino acid sequence as the target protein (target biomarker) to be measured, and labeling the obtained digest (collection of peptides) with a stable isotope Y. The fragmentation treatment can be performed in the same manner as above for the target

protein. Labeling with a stable isotope Y can also be performed in the same manner as above for the target protein. However, the stable isotope Y used herein must be an isotope that has a mass different from that of the stable isotope X used for labeling the target protein digest. For example, in the case of using the aforementioned mTRAQ (registered trademark) (produced by Applied Biosystems), when mTRAQ-light is used to label a target protein digest, mTRAQ-heavy should be used to label a standard protein digest.

Step (C) (LC-MS/MS and MRM Analysis). In step (C), the sample obtained in step (B) is first placed in an LC-MS/MS device, and then multiple reaction monitoring (MRM) analysis is performed using MRM transitions selected for the internal standard. By LC (liquid chromatography) using the LC-MS/MS device, the sample (collection of peptides labeled with a stable isotope) obtained in step (B) is separated first by one-dimensional or multi-dimensional high-performance liquid chromatography. Specific examples of such liquid chromatography include cation exchange chromatography, in which separation is conducted by utilizing electric charge difference between peptides; and reversed-phase chromatography, in which separation is conducted by utilizing hydrophobicity difference between peptides. Both of these methods may be used in combination.

Subsequently, each of the separated peptides is subjected to tandem mass spectrometry by using a tandem mass spectrometer (MS/MS spectrometer) comprising two mass spectrometers connected in series. The use of such a mass spectrometer enables the detection of several fmol levels of a target protein. Furthermore, MS/MS analysis enables the analysis of internal sequence information on peptides, thus enabling identification without false positives. Other types of MS analyzers may also be used, including magnetic sector mass spectrometers (Sector MS), quadrupole mass spectrometers (QMS), time-of-flight mass spectrometers (TOFMS), and Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometers (FT-ICRMS), and combinations of these analyzers.

Subsequently, the obtained data are put through a search engine to perform a spectral assignment and to list the peptides experimentally detected for each protein. The detected peptides are preferably grouped for each protein, and preferably at least three fragments having an m/z value larger than that of the precursor ion and at least three fragments with an m/z value of, preferably, 500 or more are selected from each MS/MS spectrum in descending order of signal strength on the spectrum. From these, two or more fragments are selected in descending order of strength, and the average of the strength is defined as the expected sensitivity of the MRR transitions. When a plurality of peptides is detected from one protein,

at least two peptides with the highest sensitivity are selected as standard peptides using the expected sensitivity as an index.

Step (D) (Quantification of the Target Protein in the Test Sample). Step (D) comprises identifying, in the MRM chromatogram detected in step (C), a peptide derived from the target protein (a target biomarker of interest) that shows the same retention time as a peptide derived from the internal standard (an internal standard peptide), and quantifying the target protein in the test sample by comparing the peak area of the internal standard peptide with the peak area of the target peptide. The target protein can be quantified by utilizing a calibration curve of the standard protein prepared beforehand.

The calibration curve can be prepared by the following method. First, a recombinant protein consisting of an amino acid sequence that is identical to that of the target biomarker protein is digested with a protease such as trypsin, as described above. Subsequently, precursor-fragment transition selection standards (PTFS) of a known concentration are individually labeled with two different types of stable isotopes (*i.e.*, one is labeled with a stable isomer used to label an internal standard peptide (labeled with IS), whereas the other is labeled with a stable isomer used to label a target peptide (labeled with T). A plurality of samples are produced by blending a certain amount of the IS-labeled PTFS with various concentrations of the T-labeled PTFS. These samples are placed in the aforementioned LC-MS/MS device to perform MRM analysis. The area ratio of the T-labeled PTFS to the IS-labeled PTFS (T-labeled PTFS/IS-labeled PTFS) on the obtained MRM chromatogram is plotted against the amount of the T-labeled PTFS to prepare a calibration curve. The absolute amount of the target protein contained in the test sample can be calculated by reference to the calibration curve.

2. DETECTION OF NUCLEIC ACIDS CORRESPONDING TO PROTEIN

MARKERS

In certain embodiments, the invention involves the detection of nucleic acid biomarkers, *e.g.*, the corresponding genes or mRNA of the protein markers of the invention.

In various embodiments, the prognostic methods of the present invention generally involve the determination of expression levels of a set of genes in a biological sample.

Determination of gene expression levels in the practice of the inventive methods may be performed by any suitable method. For example, determination of gene expression levels may be performed by detecting the expression of mRNA expressed from the genes of interest and/or by detecting the expression of a polypeptide encoded by the genes.

For detecting nucleic acids encoding biomarkers of the invention, any suitable method can be used, including, but not limited to, Southern blot analysis, Northern blot analysis, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (see, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,683,195; 4,683,202, and 6,040,166; "PCR Protocols: A Guide to Methods and Applications", Innis et al. (Eds), 1990, Academic Press: New York), reverse transcriptase PCR (RT-PCT), anchored PCR, competitive PCR (see, for example, U.S. Pat. No. 5,747,251), rapid amplification of cDNA ends (RACE) (see, for example, "Gene Cloning and Analysis: Current Innovations, 1997, pp. 99-115); ligase chain reaction (LCR) (see, for example, EP 01 320 308), one-sided PCR (Ohara et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., 1989, 86: 5673-5677), in situ hybridization, Taqman-based assays (Holland et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., 1991, 88: 7276-7280), differential display (see, for example, Liang et al., Nucl. Acid. Res., 1993, 21: 3269-3275) and other RNA fingerprinting techniques, nucleic acid sequence based amplification (NASBA) and other transcription based amplification systems (see, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,409,818 and 5,554,527), Qbeta Replicase, Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA), Repair Chain Reaction (RCR), nuclease protection assays, subtraction-based methods, Rapid-Scan®, etc.

In other embodiments, gene expression levels of biomarkers of interest may be determined by amplifying complementary DNA (cDNA) or complementary RNA (cRNA) produced from mRNA and analyzing it using a microarray. A number of different array configurations and methods of their production are known to those skilled in the art (see, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,445,934; 5,532,128; 5,556,752; 5,242,974; 5,384,261; 5,405,783; 5,412,087; 5,424,186; 5,429,807; 5,436,327; 5,472,672; 5,527,681; 5,529,756; 5,545,531; 5,554,501; 5,561,071; 5,571,639; 5,593,839; 5,599,695; 5,624,711; 5,658,734; and 5,700,637). Microarray technology allows for the measurement of the steady-state mRNA level of a large number of genes simultaneously. Microarrays currently in wide use include cDNA arrays and oligonucleotide arrays. Analyses using microarrays are generally based on measurements of the intensity of the signal received from a labeled probe used to detect a cDNA sequence from the sample that hybridizes to a nucleic acid probe immobilized at a known location on the microarray (see, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,004,755; 6,218,114; 6,218,122; and 6,271,002). Array-based gene expression methods are known in the art and have been described in numerous scientific publications as well as in patents (see, for example, M. Schena et al., Science, 1995, 270: 467-470; M. Schena et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 1996, 93: 10614-10619; J. J. Chen et al., Genomics, 1998, 51: 313-324; U.S. Pat.

Nos. 5,143,854; 5,445,934; 5,807,522; 5,837,832; 6,040,138; 6,045,996; 6,284,460; and 6,607,885).

Nucleic acid used as a template for amplification can be isolated from cells contained in the biological sample, according to standard methodologies. (Sambrook et al., 1989) The nucleic acid may be genomic DNA or fractionated or whole cell RNA. Where RNA is used, it may be desired to convert the RNA to a complementary cDNA. In one embodiment, the RNA is whole cell RNA and is used directly as the template for amplification.

Pairs of primers that selectively hybridize to nucleic acids corresponding to any of the ER-positive breast cancer progression biomarker nucleotide sequences identified herein are contacted with the isolated nucleic acid under conditions that permit selective hybridization. Once hybridized, the nucleic acid:primer complex is contacted with one or more enzymes that facilitate template-dependent nucleic acid synthesis. Multiple rounds of amplification, also referred to as "cycles," are conducted until a sufficient amount of amplification product is produced. Next, the amplification product is detected. In certain applications, the detection may be performed by visual means. Alternatively, the detection may involve indirect identification of the product via chemiluminescence, radioactive scintigraphy of incorporated radiolabel or fluorescent label or even via a system using electrical or thermal impulse signals (Affymax technology; Bellus, 1994). Following detection, one may compare the results seen in a given patient with a statistically significant reference group of normal patients and cancer patients. In this way, it is possible to correlate the amount of nucleic acid detected with various clinical states.

The term primer, as defined herein, is meant to encompass any nucleic acid that is capable of priming the synthesis of a nascent nucleic acid in a template-dependent process. Typically, primers are oligonucleotides from ten to twenty base pairs in length, but longer sequences may be employed. Primers may be provided in double-stranded or single-stranded form, although the single-stranded form is preferred.

A number of template dependent processes are available to amplify the nucleic acid sequences present in a given template sample. One of the best known amplification methods is the polymerase chain reaction (referred to as PCR) which is described in detail in U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,683,195, 4,683,202 and 4,800,159, and in Innis et al., 1990, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

In PCR, two primer sequences are prepared which are complementary to regions on opposite complementary strands of the target nucleic acid sequence. An excess of

deoxynucleoside triphosphates are added to a reaction mixture along with a DNA polymerase, *e.g.*, Taq polymerase. If the target nucleic acid sequence is present in a sample, the primers will bind to the target nucleic acid and the polymerase will cause the primers to be extended along the target nucleic acid sequence by adding on nucleotides. By raising and
5 lowering the temperature of the reaction mixture, the extended primers will dissociate from the target nucleic acid to form reaction products, excess primers will bind to the target nucleic acid and to the reaction products and the process is repeated.

A reverse transcriptase PCR amplification procedure may be performed in order to quantify the amount of mRNA amplified. Methods of reverse transcribing RNA into cDNA
10 are well known and described in Sambrook et al., 1989. Alternative methods for reverse transcription utilize thermostable DNA polymerases. These methods are described in WO 90/07641 filed Dec. 21, 1990. Polymerase chain reaction methodologies are well known in the art.

Another method for amplification is the ligase chain reaction ("LCR"), disclosed in
15 European Application No. 320 308, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. In LCR, two complementary probe pairs are prepared, and in the presence of the target sequence, each pair will bind to opposite complementary strands of the target such that they abut. In the presence of a ligase, the two probe pairs will link to form a single unit. By temperature cycling, as in PCR, bound ligated units dissociate from the target and then serve as "target
20 sequences" for ligation of excess probe pairs. U.S. Pat. No. 4,883,750 describes a method similar to LCR for binding probe pairs to a target sequence.

Qbeta Replicase, described in PCT Application No. PCT/US87/00880, also may be used as still another amplification method in the present invention. In this method, a replicative sequence of RNA which has a region complementary to that of a target is added to
25 a sample in the presence of an RNA polymerase. The polymerase will copy the replicative sequence which may then be detected.

An isothermal amplification method, in which restriction endonucleases and ligases are used to achieve the amplification of target molecules that contain nucleotide 5'-[α -thio]-triphosphates in one strand of a restriction site also may be useful in the amplification of
30 nucleic acids in the present invention. Walker et al. (1992), incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA) is another method of carrying out isothermal amplification of nucleic acids which involves multiple rounds of strand

displacement and synthesis, *i.e.*, nick translation. A similar method, called Repair Chain Reaction (RCR), involves annealing several probes throughout a region targeted for amplification, followed by a repair reaction in which only two of the four bases are present. The other two bases may be added as biotinylated derivatives for easy detection. A similar approach is used in SDA. Target specific sequences also may be detected using a cyclic probe reaction (CPR). In CPR, a probe having 3' and 5' sequences of non-specific DNA and a middle sequence of specific RNA is hybridized to DNA which is present in a sample. Upon hybridization, the reaction is treated with RNase H, and the products of the probe identified as distinctive products which are released after digestion. The original template is annealed to another cycling probe and the reaction is repeated.

Still other amplification methods described in GB Application No. 2 202 328, and in PCT Application No. PCT/US89/01025, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, may be used in accordance with the present invention. In the former application, "modified" primers are used in a PCR like, template and enzyme dependent synthesis. The primers may be modified by labeling with a capture moiety (*e.g.*, biotin) and/or a detector moiety (*e.g.*, enzyme). In the latter application, an excess of labeled probes are added to a sample. In the presence of the target sequence, the probe binds and is cleaved catalytically. After cleavage, the target sequence is released intact to be bound by excess probe. Cleavage of the labeled probe signals the presence of the target sequence.

Other contemplated nucleic acid amplification procedures include transcription-based amplification systems (TAS), including nucleic acid sequence based amplification (NASBA) and 3SR. Kwoh et al. (1989); Gingeras et al., PCT Application WO 88/10315, incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. In NASBA, the nucleic acids may be prepared for amplification by standard phenol/chloroform extraction, heat denaturation of a clinical sample, treatment with lysis buffer and minispin columns for isolation of DNA and RNA or guanidinium chloride extraction of RNA. These amplification techniques involve annealing a primer which has target specific sequences. Following polymerization, DNA/RNA hybrids are digested with RNase H while double stranded DNA molecules are heat denatured again. In either case the single stranded DNA is made fully double stranded by addition of second target specific primer, followed by polymerization. The double-stranded DNA molecules are then multiply transcribed by a polymerase such as T7 or SP6. In an isothermal cyclic reaction, the RNA's are reverse transcribed into double stranded DNA, and transcribed once

against with a polymerase such as T7 or SP6. The resulting products, whether truncated or complete, indicate target specific sequences.

Davey et al., European Application No. 329 822 (incorporated herein by reference in its entirety) disclose a nucleic acid amplification process involving cyclically synthesizing single-stranded RNA ("ssRNA"), ssDNA, and double-stranded DNA (dsDNA), which may be used in accordance with the present invention. The ssRNA is a first template for a first primer oligonucleotide, which is elongated by reverse transcriptase (RNA-dependent DNA polymerase). The RNA is then removed from the resulting DNA:RNA duplex by the action of ribonuclease H (RNase H, an RNase specific for RNA in duplex with either DNA or RNA). The resultant ssDNA is a second template for a second primer, which also includes the sequences of an RNA polymerase promoter (exemplified by T7 RNA polymerase) 5' to its homology to the template. This primer is then extended by DNA polymerase (exemplified by the large "Klenow" fragment of E. coli DNA polymerase 1), resulting in a double-stranded DNA ("dsDNA") molecule, having a sequence identical to that of the original RNA between the primers and having additionally, at one end, a promoter sequence. This promoter sequence may be used by the appropriate RNA polymerase to make many RNA copies of the DNA. These copies may then re-enter the cycle leading to very swift amplification. With proper choice of enzymes, this amplification may be done isothermally without addition of enzymes at each cycle. Because of the cyclical nature of this process, the starting sequence may be chosen to be in the form of either DNA or RNA.

Miller et al., PCT Application WO 89/06700 (incorporated herein by reference in its entirety) disclose a nucleic acid sequence amplification scheme based on the hybridization of a promoter/primer sequence to a target single-stranded DNA ("ssDNA") followed by transcription of many RNA copies of the sequence. This scheme is not cyclic, *i.e.*, new templates are not produced from the resultant RNA transcripts. Other amplification methods include "race" and "one-sided PCR." Frohman (1990) and Ohara et al. (1989), each herein incorporated by reference in their entirety.

Methods based on ligation of two (or more) oligonucleotides in the presence of nucleic acid having the sequence of the resulting "di-oligonucleotide", thereby amplifying the di-oligonucleotide, also may be used in the amplification step of the present invention. Wu et al. (1989), incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Oligonucleotide probes or primers of the present invention may be of any suitable length, depending on the particular assay format and the particular needs and targeted

sequences employed. In a preferred embodiment, the oligonucleotide probes or primers are at least 10 nucleotides in length (preferably, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32 . . .) and they may be adapted to be especially suited for a chosen nucleic acid amplification system and/or hybridization system used. Longer probes and primers are also within the scope of the present invention as well known in the art. Primers having more than 30, more than 40, more than 50 nucleotides and probes having more than 100, more than 200, more than 300, more than 500 more than 800 and more than 1000 nucleotides in length are also covered by the present invention. Of course, longer primers have the disadvantage of being more expensive and thus, primers having between 12 and 30 nucleotides in length are usually designed and used in the art. As well known in the art, probes ranging from 10 to more than 2000 nucleotides in length can be used in the methods of the present invention. As for the % of identity described above, non-specifically described sizes of probes and primers (*e.g.*, 16, 17, 31, 24, 39, 350, 450, 550, 900, 1240 nucleotides, . . .) are also within the scope of the present invention. In one embodiment, the oligonucleotide probes or primers of the present invention specifically hybridize with a marker RNA (or its complementary sequence) or a marker mRNA. More preferably, the marker primers and probes will be chosen to detect a marker RNA which is associated with risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

In other embodiments, the detection means can utilize a hybridization technique, *e.g.*, where a specific primer or probe is selected to anneal to a target biomarker of interest and thereafter detection of selective hybridization is made. As commonly known in the art, the oligonucleotide probes and primers can be designed by taking into consideration the melting point of hybridization thereof with its targeted sequence (see below and in Sambrook et al., 1989, *Molecular Cloning--A Laboratory Manual*, 2nd Edition, CSH Laboratories; Ausubel et al., 1994, in *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, John Wiley & Sons Inc., N.Y.).

To enable hybridization to occur under the assay conditions of the present invention, oligonucleotide primers and probes should comprise an oligonucleotide sequence that has at least 70% (at least 71%, 72%, 73%, 74%), preferably at least 75% (75%, 76%, 77%, 78%, 79%, 80%, 81%, 82%, 83%, 84%, 85%, 86%, 87%, 88%, 89%) and more preferably at least 90% (90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99%, 100%) identity to a portion of a filamin A or polynucleotide of another biomarker of the invention. Probes and primers of the present invention are those that hybridize under stringent hybridization conditions and those that hybridize to biomarker homologs of the invention under at least moderately

stringent conditions. In certain embodiments probes and primers of the present invention have complete sequence identity to the biomarkers of the invention (*e.g.* calbindin 2, gene sequences (*e.g.*, cDNA or mRNA). It should be understood that other probes and primers could be easily designed and used in the present invention based on the biomarkers of the invention disclosed herein by using methods of computer alignment and sequence analysis known in the art (cf. *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Third Edition, edited by Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 2000).

3. ANTIBODIES AND LABELS

In some embodiments, the invention provides methods and compositions that include labels for the highly sensitive detection and quantitation of the markers of the invention. One skilled in the art will recognize that many strategies can be used for labeling target molecules to enable their detection or discrimination in a mixture of particles. The labels may be attached by any known means, including methods that utilize non-specific or specific interactions of label and target. Labels may provide a detectable signal or affect the mobility of the particle in an electric field. In addition, labeling can be accomplished directly or through binding partners.

In some embodiments, the label comprises a binding partner that binds to the biomarker of interest, where the binding partner is attached to a fluorescent moiety. The compositions and methods of the invention may utilize highly fluorescent moieties, *e.g.*, a moiety capable of emitting at least about 200 photons when simulated by a laser emitting light at the excitation wavelength of the moiety, wherein the laser is focused on a spot not less than about 5 microns in diameter that contains the moiety, and wherein the total energy directed at the spot by the laser is no more than about 3 microJoules. Moieties suitable for the compositions and methods of the invention are described in more detail below.

In some embodiments, the invention provides a label for detecting a biological molecule comprising a binding partner for the biological molecule that is attached to a fluorescent moiety, wherein the fluorescent moiety is capable of emitting at least about 200 photons when simulated by a laser emitting light at the excitation wavelength of the moiety, wherein the laser is focused on a spot not less than about 5 microns in diameter that contains the moiety, and wherein the total energy directed at the spot by the laser is no more than about 3 microJoules. In some embodiments, the moiety comprises a plurality of fluorescent entities, *e.g.*, about 2 to 4, 2 to 5, 2 to 6, 2 to 7, 2 to 8, 2 to 9, 2 to 10, or about 3 to 5, 3 to 6, 3 to 7, 3 to 8, 3 to 9, or 3 to 10 fluorescent entities. In some embodiments, the moiety

comprises about 2 to 4 fluorescent entities. In some embodiments, the biological molecule is a protein or a small molecule. In some embodiments, the biological molecule is a protein. The fluorescent entities can be fluorescent dye molecules. In some embodiments, the fluorescent dye molecules comprise at least one substituted indolium ring system in which the substituent on the 3-carbon of the indolium ring contains a chemically reactive group or a conjugated substance. In some embodiments, the dye molecules are Alexa Fluor molecules selected from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 647, Alexa Fluor 680 or Alexa Fluor 700. In some embodiments, the dye molecules are Alexa Fluor molecules selected from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 680 or Alexa Fluor 700. In some embodiments, the dye molecules are Alexa Fluor 647 dye molecules. In some embodiments, the dye molecules comprise a first type and a second type of dye molecules, *e.g.*, two different Alexa Fluor molecules, *e.g.*, where the first type and second type of dye molecules have different emission spectra. The ratio of the number of first type to second type of dye molecule can be, *e.g.*, 4 to 1, 3 to 1, 2 to 1, 1 to 1, 1 to 2, 1 to 3 or 1 to 4. The binding partner can be, *e.g.*, an antibody.

In some embodiments, the invention provides a label for the detection of a biological marker of the invention, wherein the label comprises a binding partner for the marker and a fluorescent moiety, wherein the fluorescent moiety is capable of emitting at least about 200 photons when simulated by a laser emitting light at the excitation wavelength of the moiety, wherein the laser is focused on a spot not less than about 5 microns in diameter that contains the moiety, and wherein the total energy directed at the spot by the laser is no more than about 3 microJoules. In some embodiments, the fluorescent moiety comprises a fluorescent molecule. In some embodiments, the fluorescent moiety comprises a plurality of fluorescent molecules, *e.g.*, about 2 to 10, 2 to 8, 2 to 6, 2 to 4, 3 to 10, 3 to 8, or 3 to 6 fluorescent molecules. In some embodiments, the label comprises about 2 to 4 fluorescent molecules. In some embodiments, the fluorescent dye molecules comprise at least one substituted indolium ring system in which the substituent on the 3-carbon of the indolium ring contains a chemically reactive group or a conjugated substance. In some embodiments, the fluorescent molecules are selected from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 647, Alexa Fluor 680 or Alexa Fluor 700. In some embodiments, the fluorescent molecules are selected from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 680 or Alexa Fluor 700. In some embodiments, the fluorescent molecules are Alexa Fluor 647 molecules. In some embodiments, the binding partner comprises an antibody. In

some embodiments, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody. In other embodiments, the antibody is a polyclonal antibody.

The term "antibody," as used herein, is a broad term and is used in its ordinary sense, including, without limitation, to refer to naturally occurring antibodies as well as non-naturally occurring antibodies, including, for example, single chain antibodies, chimeric, bifunctional and humanized antibodies, as well as antigen-binding fragments thereof. An "antigen-binding fragment" of an antibody refers to the part of the antibody that participates in antigen binding. The antigen binding site is formed by amino acid residues of the N-terminal variable ("V") regions of the heavy ("H") and light ("L") chains. It will be appreciated that the choice of epitope or region of the molecule to which the antibody is raised will determine its specificity, *e.g.*, for various forms of the molecule, if present, or for total (*e.g.*, all, or substantially all of the molecule).

Methods for producing antibodies are well-established. One skilled in the art will recognize that many procedures are available for the production of antibodies, for example, as described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Ed Harlow and David Lane, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory (1988), Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y. One skilled in the art will also appreciate that binding fragments or Fab fragments which mimic antibodies can also be prepared from genetic information by various procedures (*Antibody Engineering: A Practical Approach* (Borrebäck, C., ed.), 1995, Oxford University Press, Oxford; *J. Immunol.* 149, 3914-3920 (1992)). Monoclonal and polyclonal antibodies to molecules, *e.g.*, proteins, and markers also commercially available (R and D Systems, Minneapolis, Minn.; HyTest, HyTest Ltd., Turku Finland; Abcam Inc., Cambridge, Mass., USA, Life Diagnostics, Inc., West Chester, Pa., USA; Fitzgerald Industries International, Inc., Concord, Mass. 01742-3049 USA; BiosPacific, Emeryville, Calif.).

In some embodiments, the antibody is a polyclonal antibody. In other embodiments, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody.

Antibodies may be prepared by any of a variety of techniques known to those of ordinary skill in the art (see, for example, Harlow and Lane, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 1988). In general, antibodies can be produced by cell culture techniques, including the generation of monoclonal antibodies as described herein, or via transfection of antibody genes into suitable bacterial or mammalian cell hosts, in order to allow for the production of recombinant antibodies.

Monoclonal antibodies may be prepared using hybridoma methods, such as the technique of Kohler and Milstein (Eur. J. Immunol. 6:511-519, 1976), and improvements thereto. These methods involve the preparation of immortal cell lines capable of producing antibodies having the desired specificity. Monoclonal antibodies may also be made by recombinant DNA methods, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567. DNA encoding antibodies employed in the disclosed methods may be isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures. Recombinant antibodies, antibody fragments, and/or fusions thereof, can be expressed in vitro or in prokaryotic cells (*e.g.* bacteria) or eukaryotic cells (*e.g.* yeast, insect or mammalian cells) and further purified as necessary using well known methods.

More particularly, monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) may be readily prepared through use of well-known techniques, such as those exemplified in U.S. Pat. No. 4,196,265, incorporated herein by reference. Typically, this technique involves immunizing a suitable animal with a selected immunogen composition, *e.g.*, a purified or partially purified expressed protein, polypeptide or peptide. The immunizing composition is administered in a manner effective to stimulate antibody producing cells. The methods for generating monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) generally begin along the same lines as those for preparing polyclonal antibodies. Rodents such as mice and rats are preferred animals, however, the use of rabbit, sheep or frog cells is also possible. The use of rats may provide certain advantages (Goding, 1986, pp. 60-61), but mice are preferred, with the BALB/c mouse being most preferred as this is most routinely used and generally gives a higher percentage of stable fusions.

The animals are injected with antigen as described above. The antigen may be coupled to carrier molecules such as keyhole limpet hemocyanin if necessary. The antigen would typically be mixed with adjuvant, such as Freund's complete or incomplete adjuvant. Booster injections with the same antigen would occur at approximately two-week intervals. Following immunization, somatic cells with the potential for producing antibodies, specifically B lymphocytes (B cells), are selected for use in the MAb generating protocol. These cells may be obtained from biopsied spleens, tonsils or lymph nodes, or from a peripheral blood sample. Spleen cells and peripheral blood cells are preferred, the former because they are a rich source of antibody-producing cells that are in the dividing plasmablast stage, and the latter because peripheral blood is easily accessible. Often, a panel of animals

will have been immunized and the spleen of the animal with the highest antibody titer will be removed and the spleen lymphocytes obtained by homogenizing the spleen with a syringe.

The antibody-producing B lymphocytes from the immunized animal are then fused with cells of an immortal myeloma cell, generally one of the same species as the animal that was immunized. Myeloma cell lines suited for use in hybridoma-producing fusion procedures preferably are non-antibody-producing, have high fusion efficiency, and enzyme deficiencies that render them incapable of growing in certain selective media which support the growth of only the desired fused cells (hybridomas).

The selected hybridomas would then be serially diluted and cloned into individual antibody-producing cell lines, which clones may then be propagated indefinitely to provide MAbs. The cell lines may be exploited for MAb production in two basic ways. A sample of the hybridoma may be injected (often into the peritoneal cavity) into a histocompatible animal of the type that was used to provide the somatic and myeloma cells for the original fusion. The injected animal develops tumors secreting the specific monoclonal antibody produced by the fused cell hybrid. The body fluids of the animal, such as serum or ascites fluid, may then be tapped to provide MAbs in high concentration. The individual cell lines also may be cultured in vitro, where the MAbs are naturally secreted into the culture medium from which they may be readily obtained in high concentrations. MAbs produced by either means may be further purified, if desired, using filtration, centrifugation and various chromatographic methods such as HPLC or affinity chromatography.

Large amounts of the monoclonal antibodies of the present invention also may be obtained by multiplying hybridoma cells in vivo. Cell clones are injected into mammals which are histocompatible with the parent cells, *e.g.*, syngeneic mice, to cause growth of antibody-producing tumors. Optionally, the animals are primed with a hydrocarbon, especially oils such as pristane (tetramethylpentadecane) prior to injection.

In accordance with the present invention, fragments of the monoclonal antibody of the invention may be obtained from the monoclonal antibody produced as described above, by methods which include digestion with enzymes such as pepsin or papain and/or cleavage of disulfide bonds by chemical reduction. Alternatively, monoclonal antibody fragments encompassed by the present invention may be synthesized using an automated peptide synthesizer.

Antibodies may also be derived from a recombinant antibody library that is based on amino acid sequences that have been designed in silico and encoded by polynucleotides that

are synthetically generated. Methods for designing and obtaining in silico-created sequences are known in the art (Knappik et al., J. Mol. Biol. 296:254:57-86, 2000; Krebs et al., J. Immunol. Methods 254:67-84, 2001; U.S. Pat. No. 6,300,064).

Digestion of antibodies to produce antigen-binding fragments thereof can be

5 performed using techniques well known in the art. For example, the proteolytic enzyme papain preferentially cleaves IgG molecules to yield several fragments, two of which (the "F(ab)" fragments) each comprise a covalent heterodimer that includes an intact antigen-binding site. The enzyme pepsin is able to cleave IgG molecules to provide several fragments, including the "F(ab')₂" fragment, which comprises both antigen-binding sites.

10 "Fv" fragments can be produced by preferential proteolytic cleavage of an IgM, IgG or IgA immunoglobulin molecule, but are more commonly derived using recombinant techniques known in the art. The Fv fragment includes a non-covalent VH::VL heterodimer including an antigen-binding site which retains much of the antigen recognition and binding capabilities of the native antibody molecule (Inbar et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 69:2659-2662 (1972);
15 Hochman et al., Biochem. 15:2706-2710 (1976); and Ehrlich et al., Biochem. 19:4091-4096 (1980)).

Antibody fragments that specifically bind to the protein biomarkers disclosed herein can also be isolated from a library of scFvs using known techniques, such as those described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,885,793.

20 A wide variety of expression systems are available in the art for the production of antibody fragments, including Fab fragments, scFv, VL and VHs. For example, expression systems of both prokaryotic and eukaryotic origin may be used for the large-scale production of antibody fragments. Particularly advantageous are expression systems that permit the secretion of large amounts of antibody fragments into the culture medium. Eukaryotic
25 expression systems for large-scale production of antibody fragments and antibody fusion proteins have been described that are based on mammalian cells, insect cells, plants, transgenic animals, and lower eukaryotes. For example, the cost-effective, large-scale production of antibody fragments can be achieved in yeast fermentation systems. Large-scale fermentation of these organisms is well known in the art and is currently used for bulk
30 production of several recombinant proteins.

Antibodies that bind to the protein biomarkers employed in the present methods are, in some cases, available commercially or can be obtained without undue experimentation.

In still other embodiments, particularly where oligonucleotides are used as binding partners to detect and hybridize to mRNA biomarkers or other nucleic acid based biomarkers, the binding partners (*e.g.*, oligonucleotides) can comprise a label, *e.g.*, a fluorescent moiety or dye. In addition, any binding partner of the invention, *e.g.*, an antibody, can also be labeled with a fluorescent moiety. The fluorescence of the moiety will be sufficient to allow detection in a single molecule detector, such as the single molecule detectors described herein. A "fluorescent moiety," as that term is used herein, includes one or more fluorescent entities whose total fluorescence is such that the moiety may be detected in the single molecule detectors described herein. Thus, a fluorescent moiety may comprise a single entity (*e.g.*, a Quantum Dot or fluorescent molecule) or a plurality of entities (*e.g.*, a plurality of fluorescent molecules). It will be appreciated that when "moiety," as that term is used herein, refers to a group of fluorescent entities, *e.g.*, a plurality of fluorescent dye molecules, each individual entity may be attached to the binding partner separately or the entities may be attached together, as long as the entities as a group provide sufficient fluorescence to be detected.

Typically, the fluorescence of the moiety involves a combination of quantum efficiency and lack of photobleaching sufficient that the moiety is detectable above background levels in a single molecule detector, with the consistency necessary for the desired limit of detection, accuracy, and precision of the assay. For example, in some embodiments, the fluorescence of the fluorescent moiety is such that it allows detection and/or quantitation of a molecule, *e.g.*, a marker, at a limit of detection of less than about 10, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0.1, 0.01, 0.001, 0.00001, or 0.000001 pg/ml and with a coefficient of variation of less than about 20, 15, 14, 13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1% or less, *e.g.*, about 10% or less, in the instruments described herein. In some embodiments, the fluorescence of the fluorescent moiety is such that it allows detection and/or quantitation of a molecule, *e.g.*, a marker, at a limit of detection of less than about 5, 1, 0.5, 0.1, 0.05, 0.01, 0.005, 0.001 pg/ml and with a coefficient of variation of less than about 10%, in the instruments described herein. "Limit of detection," or LoD, as those terms are used herein, includes the lowest concentration at which one can identify a sample as containing a molecule of the substance of interest, *e.g.*, the first non-zero value. It can be defined by the variability of zeros and the slope of the standard curve. For example, the limit of detection of an assay may be determined by running a standard curve, determining the standard curve zero value, and

adding 2 standard deviations to that value. A concentration of the substance of interest that produces a signal equal to this value is the "lower limit of detection" concentration.

Furthermore, the moiety has properties that are consistent with its use in the assay of choice. In some embodiments, the assay is an immunoassay, where the fluorescent moiety is attached to an antibody; the moiety must have properties such that it does not aggregate with other antibodies or proteins, or experiences no more aggregation than is consistent with the required accuracy and precision of the assay. In some embodiments, fluorescent moieties that are preferred are fluorescent moieties, *e.g.*, dye molecules that have a combination of 1) high absorption coefficient; 2) high quantum yield; 3) high photostability (low photobleaching); and 4) compatibility with labeling the molecule of interest (*e.g.*, protein) so that it may be analyzed using the analyzers and systems of the invention (*e.g.*, does not cause precipitation of the protein of interest, or precipitation of a protein to which the moiety has been attached).

Any suitable fluorescent moiety may be used. Examples include, but are not limited to, Alexa Fluor dyes (Molecular Probes, Eugene, Oreg.). The Alexa Fluor dyes are disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,977,305; 6,974,874; 6,130,101; and 6,974,305 which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety. Some embodiments of the invention utilize a dye chosen from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 647, Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 555, Alexa Fluor 610, Alexa Fluor 680, Alexa Fluor 700, and Alexa Fluor 750. Some embodiments of the invention utilize a dye chosen from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 647, Alexa Fluor 700 and Alexa Fluor 750. Some embodiments of the invention utilize a dye chosen from the group consisting of Alexa Fluor 488, Alexa Fluor 532, Alexa Fluor 555, Alexa Fluor 610, Alexa Fluor 680, Alexa Fluor 700, and Alexa Fluor 750. Some embodiments of the invention utilize the Alexa Fluor 647 molecule, which has an absorption maximum between about 650 and 660 nm and an emission maximum between about 660 and 670 nm. The Alexa Fluor 647 dye is used alone or in combination with other Alexa Fluor dyes.

In some embodiments, the fluorescent label moiety that is used to detect a biomarker in a sample using the analyzer systems of the invention is a quantum dot. Quantum dots (QDs), also known as semiconductor nanocrystals or artificial atoms, are semiconductor crystals that contain anywhere between 100 to 1,000 electrons and range from 2-10 nm. Some QDs can be between 10-20 nm in diameter. QDs have high quantum yields, which makes them particularly useful for optical applications. QDs are fluorophores that fluoresce by forming excitons, which are similar to the excited state of traditional fluorophores, but have

much longer lifetimes of up to 200 nanoseconds. This property provides QDs with low photobleaching. The energy level of QDs can be controlled by changing the size and shape of the QD, and the depth of the QDs' potential. One optical feature of small excitonic QDs is coloration, which is determined by the size of the dot. The larger the dot, the redder, or more
5 towards the red end of the spectrum the fluorescence. The smaller the dot, the bluer or more towards the blue end it is. The bandgap energy that determines the energy and hence the color of the fluoresced light is inversely proportional to the square of the size of the QD. Larger QDs have more energy levels which are more closely spaced, thus allowing the QD to absorb photons containing less energy, *i.e.*, those closer to the red end of the spectrum. Because the
10 emission frequency of a dot is dependent on the bandgap, it is possible to control the output wavelength of a dot with extreme precision. In some embodiments the protein that is detected with the single molecule analyzer system is labeled with a QD. In some embodiments, the single molecule analyzer is used to detect a protein labeled with one QD and using a filter to allow for the detection of different proteins at different wavelengths.

F. ISOLATED BIOMARKERS

1. ISOLATED POLYPEPTIDE BIOMARKERS

One aspect of the invention pertains to isolated marker proteins and biologically active portions thereof, as well as polypeptide fragments suitable for use as immunogens to
20 raise antibodies directed against a marker protein or a fragment thereof. In one embodiment, the native marker protein can be isolated by an appropriate purification scheme using standard protein purification techniques. In another embodiment, a protein or peptide comprising the whole or a segment of the marker protein is produced by recombinant DNA techniques. Alternative to recombinant expression, such protein or peptide can be
25 synthesized chemically using standard peptide synthesis techniques.

An "isolated" or "purified" protein or biologically active portion thereof is substantially free of cellular material or other contaminating proteins from the cell or tissue source from which the protein is derived, or substantially free of chemical precursors or other chemicals when chemically synthesized. The language "substantially free of cellular
30 material" includes preparations of protein in which the protein is separated from cellular components of the cells from which it is isolated or recombinantly produced. Thus, protein that is substantially free of cellular material includes preparations of protein having less than about 30%, 20%, 10%, or 5% (by dry weight) of heterologous protein (also referred to herein

as a "contaminating protein"). When the protein or biologically active portion thereof is recombinantly produced, it is also preferably substantially free of culture medium, *i.e.*, culture medium represents less than about 20%, 10%, or 5% of the volume of the protein preparation. When the protein is produced by chemical synthesis, it is preferably

5 substantially free of chemical precursors or other chemicals, *i.e.*, it is separated from chemical precursors or other chemicals which are involved in the synthesis of the protein. Accordingly such preparations of the protein have less than about 30%, 20%, 10%, 5% (by dry weight) of chemical precursors or compounds other than the polypeptide of interest.

Biologically active portions of a marker protein include polypeptides comprising

10 amino acid sequences sufficiently identical to or derived from the amino acid sequence of the marker protein, which include fewer amino acids than the full length protein, and exhibit at least one activity of the corresponding full-length protein. Typically, biologically active portions comprise a domain or motif with at least one activity of the corresponding full-length protein. A biologically active portion of a marker protein of the invention can be a

15 polypeptide which is, for example, 10, 25, 50, 100 or more amino acids in length. Moreover, other biologically active portions, in which other regions of the marker protein are deleted, can be prepared by recombinant techniques and evaluated for one or more of the functional activities of the native form of the marker protein.

Preferred marker proteins are encoded by nucleotide sequences provided in the

20 sequence listing. Other useful proteins are substantially identical (*e.g.*, at least about 40%, preferably 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99%) to one of these sequences and retain the functional activity of the corresponding naturally-occurring marker protein yet differ in amino acid sequence due to natural allelic variation or mutagenesis.

25 To determine the percent identity of two amino acid sequences or of two nucleic acids, the sequences are aligned for optimal comparison purposes (*e.g.*, gaps can be introduced in the sequence of a first amino acid or nucleic acid sequence for optimal alignment with a second amino or nucleic acid sequence). The amino acid residues or nucleotides at corresponding amino acid positions or nucleotide positions are then compared.

30 When a position in the first sequence is occupied by the same amino acid residue or nucleotide as the corresponding position in the second sequence, then the molecules are identical at that position. Preferably, the percent identity between the two sequences is calculated using a global alignment. Alternatively, the percent identity between the two

sequences is calculated using a local alignment. The percent identity between the two sequences is a function of the number of identical positions shared by the sequences (*i.e.*, % identity = # of identical positions/total # of positions (*e.g.*, overlapping positions) x100). In one embodiment the two sequences are the same length. In another embodiment, the two sequences are not the same length.

The determination of percent identity between two sequences can be accomplished using a mathematical algorithm. A preferred, non-limiting example of a mathematical algorithm utilized for the comparison of two sequences is the algorithm of Karlin and Altschul (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87:2264-2268, modified as in Karlin and Altschul (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90:5873-5877. Such an algorithm is incorporated into the BLASTN and BLASTX programs of Altschul, *et al.* (1990) *J. Mol. Biol.* 215:403-410. BLAST nucleotide searches can be performed with the BLASTN program, score = 100, wordlength = 12 to obtain nucleotide sequences homologous to a nucleic acid molecules of the invention. BLAST protein searches can be performed with the BLASTP program, score = 50, wordlength = 3 to obtain amino acid sequences homologous to a protein molecules of the invention. To obtain gapped alignments for comparison purposes, a newer version of the BLAST algorithm called Gapped BLAST can be utilized as described in Altschul *et al.* (1997) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 25:3389-3402, which is able to perform gapped local alignments for the programs BLASTN, BLASTP and BLASTX. Alternatively, PSI-Blast can be used to perform an iterated search which detects distant relationships between molecules. When utilizing BLAST, Gapped BLAST, and PSI-Blast programs, the default parameters of the respective programs (*e.g.*, BLASTX and BLASTN) can be used. See the NCBI website. Another preferred, non-limiting example of a mathematical algorithm utilized for the comparison of sequences is the algorithm of Myers and Miller, (1988) *CABIOS* 4:11-17. Such an algorithm is incorporated into the ALIGN program (version 2.0) which is part of the GCG sequence alignment software package. When utilizing the ALIGN program for comparing amino acid sequences, a PAM120 weight residue table, a gap length penalty of 12, and a gap penalty of 4 can be used. Yet another useful algorithm for identifying regions of local sequence similarity and alignment is the FASTA algorithm as described in Pearson and Lipman (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:2444-2448. When using the FASTA algorithm for comparing nucleotide or amino acid sequences, a PAM120 weight residue table can, for example, be used with a *k*-tuple value of 2.

The percent identity between two sequences can be determined using techniques similar to those described above, with or without allowing gaps. In calculating percent identity, only exact matches are counted.

Another aspect of the invention pertains to antibodies directed against a protein of the invention. In preferred embodiments, the antibodies specifically bind a marker protein or a fragment thereof. The terms "antibody" and "antibodies" as used interchangeably herein refer to immunoglobulin molecules as well as fragments and derivatives thereof that comprise an immunologically active portion of an immunoglobulin molecule, (*i.e.*, such a portion contains an antigen binding site which specifically binds an antigen, such as a marker protein, *e.g.*, an epitope of a marker protein). An antibody which specifically binds to a protein of the invention is an antibody which binds the protein, but does not substantially bind other molecules in a sample, *e.g.*, a biological sample, which naturally contains the protein. Examples of an immunologically active portion of an immunoglobulin molecule include, but are not limited to, single-chain antibodies (scAb), F(ab) and F(ab')₂ fragments.

An isolated protein of the invention or a fragment thereof can be used as an immunogen to generate antibodies. The full-length protein can be used or, alternatively, the invention provides antigenic peptide fragments for use as immunogens. The antigenic peptide of a protein of the invention comprises at least 8 (preferably 10, 15, 20, or 30 or more) amino acid residues of the amino acid sequence of one of the proteins of the invention, and encompasses at least one epitope of the protein such that an antibody raised against the peptide forms a specific immune complex with the protein. Preferred epitopes encompassed by the antigenic peptide are regions that are located on the surface of the protein, *e.g.*, hydrophilic regions. Hydrophobicity sequence analysis, hydrophilicity sequence analysis, or similar analyses can be used to identify hydrophilic regions. In preferred embodiments, an isolated marker protein or fragment thereof is used as an immunogen.

The invention provides polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies. The term "monoclonal antibody" or "monoclonal antibody composition", as used herein, refers to a population of antibody molecules that contain only one species of an antigen binding site capable of immunoreacting with a particular epitope. Preferred polyclonal and monoclonal antibody compositions are ones that have been selected for antibodies directed against a protein of the invention. Particularly preferred polyclonal and monoclonal antibody preparations are ones that contain only antibodies directed against a marker protein or fragment thereof. Methods

of making polyclonal, monoclonal, and recombinant antibody and antibody fragments are well known in the art.

2. ISOLATED NUCLEIC ACID BIOMARKERS

One aspect of the invention pertains to isolated nucleic acid molecules which encode a marker protein or a portion thereof. Isolated nucleic acids of the invention also include nucleic acid molecules sufficient for use as hybridization probes to identify marker nucleic acid molecules, and fragments of marker nucleic acid molecules, *e.g.*, those suitable for use as PCR primers for the amplification of a specific product or mutation of marker nucleic acid molecules. As used herein, the term "nucleic acid molecule" is intended to include DNA molecules (*e.g.*, cDNA or genomic DNA) and RNA molecules (*e.g.*, mRNA) and analogs of the DNA or RNA generated using nucleotide analogs. The nucleic acid molecule can be single-stranded or double-stranded, but preferably is double-stranded DNA.

An "isolated" nucleic acid molecule is one which is separated from other nucleic acid molecules which are present in the natural source of the nucleic acid molecule. In one embodiment, an "isolated" nucleic acid molecule (preferably a protein-encoding sequences) is free of sequences which naturally flank the nucleic acid (*i.e.*, sequences located at the 5' and 3' ends of the nucleic acid) in the genomic DNA of the organism from which the nucleic acid is derived. For example, in various embodiments, the isolated nucleic acid molecule can contain less than about 5 kb, 4 kb, 3 kb, 2 kb, 1 kb, 0.5 kb or 0.1 kb of nucleotide sequences which naturally flank the nucleic acid molecule in genomic DNA of the cell from which the nucleic acid is derived. In another embodiment, an "isolated" nucleic acid molecule, such as a cDNA molecule, can be substantially free of other cellular material, or culture medium when produced by recombinant techniques, or substantially free of chemical precursors or other chemicals when chemically synthesized. A nucleic acid molecule that is substantially free of cellular material includes preparations having less than about 30%, 20%, 10%, or 5% of heterologous nucleic acid (also referred to herein as a "contaminating nucleic acid").

A nucleic acid molecule of the present invention can be isolated using standard molecular biology techniques and the sequence information in the database records described herein. Using all or a portion of such nucleic acid sequences, nucleic acid molecules of the invention can be isolated using standard hybridization and cloning techniques (*e.g.*, as described in Sambrook *et al.*, ed., *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, 2nd ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, NY, 1989).

A nucleic acid molecule of the invention can be amplified using cDNA, mRNA, or genomic DNA as a template and appropriate oligonucleotide primers according to standard PCR amplification techniques. The nucleic acid so amplified can be cloned into an appropriate vector and characterized by DNA sequence analysis. Furthermore, nucleotides
5 corresponding to all or a portion of a nucleic acid molecule of the invention can be prepared by standard synthetic techniques, *e.g.*, using an automated DNA synthesizer.

In another preferred embodiment, an isolated nucleic acid molecule of the invention comprises a nucleic acid molecule which has a nucleotide sequence complementary to the nucleotide sequence of a marker nucleic acid or to the nucleotide sequence of a nucleic acid
10 encoding a marker protein. A nucleic acid molecule which is complementary to a given nucleotide sequence is one which is sufficiently complementary to the given nucleotide sequence that it can hybridize to the given nucleotide sequence thereby forming a stable duplex.

Moreover, a nucleic acid molecule of the invention can comprise only a portion of a
15 nucleic acid sequence, wherein the full length nucleic acid sequence comprises a marker nucleic acid or which encodes a marker protein. Such nucleic acids can be used, for example, as a probe or primer. The probe/primer typically is used as one or more substantially purified oligonucleotides. The oligonucleotide typically comprises a region of nucleotide sequence that hybridizes under stringent conditions to at least about 15, more preferably at least about
20 25, 50, 75, 100, 125, 150, 175, 200, 250, 300, 350, or 400 or more consecutive nucleotides of a nucleic acid of the invention.

Probes based on the sequence of a nucleic acid molecule of the invention can be used to detect transcripts or genomic sequences corresponding to one or more markers of the invention. In certain embodiments, the probes hybridize to nucleic acid sequences that
25 traverse splice junctions. The probe comprises a label group attached thereto, *e.g.*, a radioisotope, a fluorescent compound, an enzyme, or an enzyme co-factor. Such probes can be used as part of a diagnostic or prognostic test kit or panel for identifying cells or tissues which express or mis-express the protein, such as by measuring levels of a nucleic acid molecule encoding the protein in a sample of cells from a subject, *e.g.*, detecting mRNA
30 levels or determining whether a gene encoding the protein or its translational control sequences have been mutated or deleted.

The invention further encompasses nucleic acid molecules that differ, due to degeneracy of the genetic code, from the nucleotide sequence of nucleic acids encoding a

marker protein (*e.g.*, protein having the sequence provided in the sequence listing), and thus encode the same protein.

It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that DNA sequence polymorphisms that lead to changes in the amino acid sequence can exist within a population (*e.g.*, the human population). Such genetic polymorphisms can exist among individuals within a population due to natural allelic variation and changes known to occur in cancer. An allele is one of a group of genes which occur alternatively at a given genetic locus. In addition, it will be appreciated that DNA polymorphisms that affect RNA expression levels can also exist that may affect the overall expression level of that gene (*e.g.*, by affecting regulation or degradation).

As used herein, the phrase "allelic variant" refers to a nucleotide sequence which occurs at a given locus or to a polypeptide encoded by the nucleotide sequence.

As used herein, the terms "gene" and "recombinant gene" refer to nucleic acid molecules comprising an open reading frame encoding a polypeptide corresponding to a marker of the invention. Such natural allelic variations can typically result in 1-5% variance in the nucleotide sequence of a given gene. Alternative alleles can be identified by sequencing the gene of interest in a number of different individuals. This can be readily carried out by using hybridization probes to identify the same genetic locus in a variety of individuals. Any and all such nucleotide variations and resulting amino acid polymorphisms or variations that are the result of natural allelic variation and that do not alter the functional activity are intended to be within the scope of the invention.

In another embodiment, an isolated nucleic acid molecule of the invention is at least 15, 20, 25, 30, 40, 60, 80, 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 550, 650, 700, 800, 900, 1000, 1200, 1400, 1600, 1800, 2000, 2200, 2400, 2600, 2800, 3000, 3500, 4000, 4500, or more nucleotides in length and hybridizes under stringent conditions to a marker nucleic acid or to a nucleic acid encoding a marker protein. As used herein, the term "hybridizes under stringent conditions" is intended to describe conditions for hybridization and washing under which nucleotide sequences at least 60% (65%, 70%, preferably 75%) identical to each other typically remain hybridized to each other. Such stringent conditions are known to those skilled in the art and can be found in sections 6.3.1-6.3.6 of *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, John Wiley & Sons, N.Y. (1989). A preferred, non-limiting example of stringent hybridization conditions are hybridization in 6X sodium chloride/sodium citrate (SSC) at about 45°C, followed by one or more washes in 0.2X SSC, 0.1% SDS at 50-65°C.

G. BIOMARKER APPLICATIONS

The invention provides methods for prognosing the risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression in a subject. The invention further provides methods for monitoring progression or monitoring response of ER-positive breast cancer to a therapeutic treatment during active
5 treatment or watchful waiting.

In one aspect, the present invention constitutes an application of prognostic information obtainable by the methods of the invention in connection with analyzing, detecting, and/or measuring the ER-positive breast cancer progression biomarkers of the present invention, *i.e.*, the markers of Tables 1 and 2, which goes well beyond the discovered
10 correlation between ER-positive breast cancer progression and the biomarkers of the invention.

For example, when executing the methods of the invention for detecting and/or measuring an protein biomarker of the present invention, as described herein, one may contact a biological sample with a detection reagent, *e.g.*, a monoclonal antibody, which
15 selectively binds to the biomarker of interest, forming a protein-protein complex, which is then further detected either directly (if the antibody comprises a label) or indirectly (if a secondary detection reagent is used, *e.g.*, a secondary antibody, which in turn is labeled). Thus, the method of the invention transforms the polypeptide markers of the invention to a protein-protein complex that comprises either a detectable primary antibody or a primary and
20 further secondary antibody. Forming such protein-protein complexes is required in order to identify the presence of the biomarker of interest and necessarily changes the physical characteristics and properties of the biomarker of interest as a result of conducting the methods of the invention.

The same principal applies when conducting the methods of the invention for
25 detecting nucleic acids that correspond to the protein biomarkers of the invention. In particular, when amplification methods are used, the process results in the formation of a new population of amplicons, *i.e.*, molecules that are newly synthesized and which were not present in the original biological sample, thereby physically transforming the biological sample. Similarly, when hybridization probes are used to detect a target biomarker, a
30 physical new species of molecules is in effect created by the hybridization of the probes (optionally comprising a label) to the target biomarker mRNA (or other nucleic acid), which is then detected. Such polynucleotide products are effectively newly created or formed as a consequence of carrying out the method of the invention.

The invention provides, in one embodiment, methods for prognosing the risk for progression of an oncological disorder, *e.g.*, breast cancer. The methods of the present invention can be practiced in conjunction with any other method used by the skilled practitioner to prognose the progression or recurrence of an oncologic disorder, and/or the survival of a subject being treated for an oncologic disorder. The prognostic methods provided herein can be used to determine if additional and/ or more invasive tests or monitoring should be performed on a subject. It is understood that a disease as complex as breast cancer is rarely monitored using a single test. Therefore, it is understood that the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein are typically used in conjunction with other methods known in the art. For example, the methods of the invention may be performed in conjunction with a morphological or cytological analysis of the sample obtained from the subject, imaging analysis, and/or physical exam. Cytological methods would include immunohistochemical or immunofluorescence detection (and quantitation if appropriate) of any other molecular marker either by itself, in conjunction with other markers. Other methods would include detection of other markers by *in situ* PCR, or by extracting tissue and quantitating other markers by real time PCR. PCR is defined as polymerase chain reaction.

Methods for assessing breast cancer progression or the efficacy of a treatment regimen, *e.g.*, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, immunotherapy, surgery, hormone therapy, or any other therapeutic approach useful for treating breast cancer in a subject are also provided. In these methods, the amount of marker in a pair of samples (a first sample obtained from the subject at an earlier time point or prior to the treatment regimen and a second sample obtained from the subject at a later time point, *e.g.*, at a later time point when the subject has undergone at least a portion of the treatment regimen) is assessed. It is understood that the methods of the invention include obtaining and analyzing more than two samples (*e.g.*, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or more samples) at regular or irregular intervals for assessment of marker levels. Pairwise comparisons can be made between consecutive or non-consecutive subject samples. Trends of marker levels and rates of change of marker levels can be analyzed for any two or more consecutive or non-consecutive subject samples.

Using the methods described herein, a variety of molecules, may be screened in order to identify molecules which modulate, *e.g.*, increase or decrease the expression and/or activity of a marker of the invention. Compounds so identified can be provided to a subject in order to inhibit the aggressiveness of an oncologic disorder in the subject, to prevent the

recurrence of an oncologic disorder in the subject, or to prevent cancer progression in the subject.

The present invention pertains to the field of predictive medicine in which diagnostic assays, prognostic assays, pharmacogenomics, and monitoring clinical trials are used for prognostic (predictive) purposes to thereby treat an individual prophylactically. Accordingly, one aspect of the present invention relates to prognostic assays for determining the level of expression of one or more marker proteins or nucleic acids, in order to determine whether an individual is at risk of developing an adverse event and progressing to a more advanced stage of the disease, such as, without limitation, metastasis in breast cancer. Such assays can be used for prognostic or predictive purposes to thereby prophylactically treat an individual prior to the onset of the adverse event.

Yet another aspect of the invention pertains to monitoring the influence of agents (*e.g.*, drugs or other therapeutic compounds) on the expression or activity of a biomarker of the invention in clinical trials. These and other applications are described in further detail in the following sections.

1. PROGNOSTIC ASSAYS

An exemplary method for detecting the presence or absence or change of expression level of a marker protein or a corresponding nucleic acid in a biological sample involves obtaining a biological sample (*e.g.* an oncological disorder-associated body fluid) from a test subject and contacting the biological sample with a compound or an agent capable of detecting the polypeptide or nucleic acid (*e.g.*, mRNA, genomic DNA, or cDNA). The detection methods of the invention can thus be used to detect mRNA, protein, cDNA, or genomic DNA, for example, in a biological sample in vitro as well as in vivo.

Methods provided herein for detecting the presence, absence, change of expression level of a marker protein or corresponding nucleic acid in a biological sample include obtaining a biological sample from a subject that may or may not contain the marker protein or nucleic acid to be detected, contacting the sample with a marker-specific binding agent (*i.e.*, one or more marker-specific binding agents) that is capable of forming a complex with the marker protein or nucleic acid to be detected, and contacting the sample with a detection reagent for detection of the marker—marker-specific binding agent complex, if formed. It is understood that the methods provided herein for detecting an expression level of a marker in a biological sample includes the steps to perform the assay. In certain embodiments of the

detection methods, the level of the marker protein or nucleic acid in the sample is none or below the threshold for detection.

The methods include formation of either a transient or stable complex between the marker and the marker-specific binding agent. The methods require that the complex, if
5 formed, be formed for sufficient time to allow a detection reagent to bind the complex and produce a detectable signal (*e.g.*, fluorescent signal, a signal from a product of an enzymatic reaction, *e.g.*, a peroxidase reaction, a phosphatase reaction, a beta-galactosidase reaction, or a polymerase reaction).

In certain embodiments, all markers are detected using the same method. In certain
10 embodiments, all markers are detected using the same biological sample (*e.g.*, same body fluid or tissue). In certain embodiments, different markers are detected using various methods. In certain embodiments, markers are detected in different biological samples.

2. PROTEIN DETECTION

In certain embodiments of the invention, the marker to be detected is an protein.
15 Proteins are detected using a number of assays in which a complex between the marker protein to be detected and the marker specific binding agent would not occur naturally, for example, because one of the components is not a naturally occurring compound or the marker for detection and the marker specific binding agent are not from the same organism (*e.g.*, human marker proteins detected using marker-specific binding antibodies from mouse, rat, or
20 goat). In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the marker protein for detection is a human marker protein. In certain detection assays, the human markers for detection are bound by marker-specific, non-human antibodies, thus, the complex would not be formed in nature. The complex of the marker protein can be detected directly, *e.g.*, by use of a labeled marker-specific antibody that binds directly to the marker, or by binding a further component
25 to the marker--marker-specific antibody complex. In certain embodiments, the further component is a second marker-specific antibody capable of binding the marker at the same time as the first marker-specific antibody. In certain embodiments, the further component is a secondary antibody that binds to a marker-specific antibody, wherein the secondary antibody preferably linked to a detectable label (*e.g.*, fluorescent label, enzymatic label,
30 biotin). When the secondary antibody is linked to an enzymatic detectable label (*e.g.*, a peroxidase, a phosphatase, a beta-galactosidase), the secondary antibody is detected by contacting the enzymatic detectable label with an appropriate substrate to produce a colorimetric, fluorescent, or other detectable, preferably quantitatively detectable, product.

Antibodies for use in the methods of the invention can be polyclonal, however, in a preferred embodiment monoclonal antibodies are used. An intact antibody, or a fragment or derivative thereof (*e.g.*, Fab or F(ab')₂) can be used in the methods of the invention. Such strategies of marker protein detection are used, for example, in ELISA, RIA, western blot, and

5 immunofluorescence assay methods.

In certain detection assays, the marker present in the biological sample for detection is an enzyme and the detection reagent is an enzyme substrate. For example, the enzyme can be a protease and the substrate can be any protein that includes an appropriate protease cleavage site. Alternatively, the enzyme can be a kinase and the substrate can be any substrate for the
10 kinase. In preferred embodiments, the substrate which forms a complex with the marker enzyme to be detected is not the substrate for the enzyme in a human subject.

In certain embodiments, the marker--marker-specific binding agent complex is attached to a solid support for detection of the marker. The complex can be formed on the substrate or formed prior to capture on the substrate. For example, in an ELISA, RIA,
15 immunoprecipitation assay, western blot, immunofluorescence assay, in gel enzymatic assay the marker for detection is attached to a solid support, either directly or indirectly. In an ELISA, RIA, or immunofluorescence assay, the marker is typically attached indirectly to a solid support through an antibody or binding protein. In a western blot or
20 immunofluorescence assay, the marker is typically attached directly to the solid support. For in-gel enzyme assays, the marker is resolved in a gel, typically an acrylamide gel, in which a substrate for the enzyme is integrated.

3. NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION

In certain embodiments of the invention, the marker is a nucleic acid corresponding to a marker protein. Nucleic acids are detected using a number of assays in which a complex
25 between the marker nucleic acid to be detected and a marker-specific probe would not occur naturally, for example, because one of the components is not a naturally occurring compound. In certain embodiments, the analyte comprises a nucleic acid and the probe comprises one or more synthetic single stranded nucleic acid molecules, *e.g.*, a DNA molecule, a DNA-RNA hybrid, a PNA, or a modified nucleic acid molecule containing one or more artificial bases,
30 sugars, or backbone moieties. In certain embodiments, the synthetic nucleic acid is a single stranded is a DNA molecule that includes a fluorescent label. In certain embodiments, the synthetic nucleic acid is a single stranded oligonucleotide molecule of about 12 to about 50 nucleotides in length. In certain embodiments, the nucleic acid to be detected is an mRNA

and the complex formed is an mRNA hybridized to a single stranded DNA molecule that is complementary to the mRNA. In certain embodiments, an RNA is detected by generation of a DNA molecule (*i.e.*, a cDNA molecule) first from the RNA template using the single stranded DNA that hybridizes to the RNA as a primer, *e.g.*, a general poly-T primer to transcribe poly-A RNA. The cDNA can then be used as a template for an amplification reaction, *e.g.*, PCR, primer extension assay, using a marker-specific probe. In certain embodiments, a labeled single stranded DNA can be hybridized to the RNA present in the sample for detection of the RNA by fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) or for detection of the RNA by northern blot.

For example, in vitro techniques for detection of mRNA include northern hybridizations, in situ hybridizations, and rtPCR. In vitro techniques for detection of genomic DNA include Southern hybridizations. Techniques for detection of mRNA include PCR, northern hybridizations and in situ hybridizations. Methods include both qualitative and quantitative methods.

A general principle of such diagnostic, prognostic, and monitoring assays involves preparing a sample or reaction mixture that may contain a marker, and a probe, under appropriate conditions and for a time sufficient to allow the marker and probe to interact and bind, thus forming a complex that can be removed and/or detected in the reaction mixture. These assays can be conducted in a variety of ways known in the art, *e.g.*, ELISA assay, PCR, FISH.

4. DETECTION OF EXPRESSION LEVELS

Marker levels can be detected based on the absolute expression level or a normalized or relative expression level. Detection of absolute marker levels may be preferable when monitoring the treatment of a subject or in determining if there is a change in the breast cancer status of a subject. For example, the expression level of one or more markers can be monitored in a subject undergoing treatment for ER-positive breast cancer, *e.g.*, at regular intervals, such as monthly intervals. A modulation in the level of one or more markers can be monitored over time to observe trends in changes in marker levels. Expression levels of the biomarkers of the invention in the subject may be higher than the expression level of those markers in a normal sample, but may be lower than the prior expression level, thus indicating a benefit of the treatment regimen for the subject. Similarly, rates of change of marker levels can be important in a subject who is not subject to active treatment for ER-positive breast cancer (*e.g.*, watchful waiting). Changes, or not, in marker levels may be more relevant to

treatment decisions for the subject than marker levels present in the population. Rapid changes in marker levels in a subject who otherwise appears to have a normal, cancer-free breast may be indicative of an abnormal breast state, even if the markers are within normal ranges for the population.

As an alternative to making determinations based on the absolute expression level of the marker, determinations may be based on the normalized expression level of the marker. Expression levels are normalized by correcting the absolute expression level of a marker by comparing its expression to the expression of a gene that is not a marker, *e.g.*, a housekeeping gene that is constitutively expressed. Suitable genes for normalization include housekeeping genes such as the actin gene, or epithelial cell-specific genes. This normalization allows the comparison of the expression level in one sample, *e.g.*, a patient sample, to another sample, *e.g.*, a non-cancer sample, or between samples from different sources.

Alternatively, the expression level can be provided as a relative expression level as compared to an appropriate control, *e.g.*, population control, adjacent normal tissue control, non-progressor's tissue control, earlier time point control, etc.. Preferably, the samples used in the baseline determination will be from non-cancer cells. The choice of the cell source is dependent on the use of the relative expression level. Using expression found in normal cells as a mean expression score aids in validating whether the marker assayed is cancer specific (versus normal cells). In addition, as more data is accumulated, the mean expression value can be revised, providing improved relative expression values based on accumulated data. Expression data from cancer cells provides a means for grading the severity of the cancer state.

5. *DIAGNOSTIC, PROGNOSTIC, MONITORING AND TREATMENT METHODS*

The invention provides methods for prognosing the risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression in a subject, comprising (a) detecting the level of a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in a biological sample from the subject, wherein the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2, or any combination thereof; and (b) comparing the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the biological sample with a

predetermined threshold value; wherein the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression above or below the predetermined threshold value indicates that the subject is being at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for prognosing the risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression in a subject, comprising: (a) contacting a biological sample with one or more reagents that selectively bind to a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the biological sample from the subject, wherein the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof; (b) allowing a complex to form between the one or more reagents and the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression; (c) detecting the level of the complex; and (d) comparing the level of the complex with a predetermined threshold value; wherein the level of the complex above or below the predetermined threshold value that the subject is being at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

The invention provides methods for monitoring ER-positive breast cancer progression in a subject, the method comprising: (1) detecting the level of a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in a first biological sample obtained at a first time from the subject having ER-positive breast cancer, wherein the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof; (2) detecting the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in a second biological sample obtained from the subject at a second time, wherein the second time is later than the first time; and (3) comparing the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the second sample with the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample; wherein a change in the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression is indicative of a change in progression risk status in the subject.

In certain embodiments of the prognostic methods provided herein, an increase or decrease in the level of one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected

from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof in the biological sample as compared to the level of the one or more markers in a control sample is an indication that the subject is at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression. In certain embodiments of the prognostic methods provided herein, no increase or decrease in the detected expression level of one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the biological sample as compared to the expression level of the one or more markers in a control sample is an indication that the subject is not at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

In certain embodiments of the monitoring methods provided herein, no increase or decrease in the detected level of one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample as compared to the level of the one or more markers in the first sample is an indication that the therapy is not changing the risk status for ER-positive breast cancer progression, *e.g.* if prognosis based on the first sample was “at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression,” the subject continues to be at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression, and if prognosis based on the first sample was “not at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression,” the subject continues to be not at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression. In certain embodiments of the monitoring methods provided herein, wherein an increased or decreased expression level of one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample as compared to the expression level in the first sample is an indication that the therapy is changing the risk status for ER-positive breast cancer progression, *e.g.* if prognosis based on the first sample was “high risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression,” the subject is at less risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression, and if prognosis based on the first sample was “not at high risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression,” the subject is at an increased risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

In certain embodiments the monitoring methods provided herein further comprise comparing the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the first sample or the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample with the

level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression related markers in a control sample.

In certain embodiments of the monitoring methods provided herein wherein an increase, decrease or no change in the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample as compared to the level of the one or more markers in the first sample is an indication that the subject is at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression, it is also an indication for selection of more aggressive and/or preventive treatment for breast cancer progression in the subject. In certain embodiments of the monitoring methods provided herein, wherein an increase, decrease or no change in the detected level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample as compared to the level of the one or more markers in the first sample is an indication that the subject is not at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression, it is also an indication against selection of more aggressive and/or preventive treatment for breast cancer progression in the subject.

In certain embodiments of the monitoring methods provided herein, modulation of the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample as compared to the level of the corresponding marker(s) in the first sample is indicative of a change in progression risk status in response to treatment of the breast cancer in the subject. In certain embodiments of the monitoring methods provided herein, the methods further comprise comparing the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the second sample to the level of the corresponding markers in a control sample.

In any of the aforementioned embodiments, the methods may also include a step of determining whether a subject having ER-positive breast cancer or who is being treated for being at risk of progressing is responsive to a particular treatment. Such a step can include, for example, measuring the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 prior to administering an anti-breast cancer treatment, and measuring the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 after administering the anti-breast cancer treatment, and comparing the expression level before and after treatment. Determining that the progression risk status is responsive to the treatment if the expression level of the one or more markers is higher or lower than before treatment as compared to after treatment. The method may further include the step of adjusting the treatment to a higher dose in order to increase the

responsiveness to the treatment, or adjusting the treatment to a lower dose in order to decrease the responsiveness to the treatment.

In any of the aforementioned embodiments, the methods may also include a step of determining whether a subject having ER-positive breast cancer or who is being treated for being at risk of progression is not responsive to a particular treatment. Such a step can include, for example, measuring the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 prior to administering an anti-breast cancer treatment, and measuring the level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 after administering the anti-breast cancer treatment, and comparing the expression level before and after treatment. Determining that the progression risk status is not responsive to the treatment if the expression level of the one or more markers after treatment is not higher or lower than before treatment. The method may further include the step of adjusting the treatment to a higher dose in order to increase the responsiveness to the treatment.

In certain embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is a protein, for example, a protein listed in Tables 1 and 2. In some embodiments, the invention also relates to a marker comprising one or more of the proteins listed in Tables 1 and 2.

In some embodiments, the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain embodiments, the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is increased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

In other embodiments, the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, is decreased when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

In certain embodiments the prognostic methods provided herein further comprise detecting the level of one or more additional markers of breast cancer progression in the biological sample and preferably further comprise comparing the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the biological sample to the level in a control sample. In certain embodiments, the combination of the level of one or more known prognostic markers of

breast cancer with one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression marker levels increases the predictive value of the method.

In certain embodiments the monitoring methods provided herein further comprise detecting the level of one or more additional markers of breast cancer progression in the first sample and the second sample, and preferably further comprising comparing the level of known prognostic markers in the first sample with the level of expression of the known prognostic markers in the second sample. In certain monitoring methods, the change in known prognostic marker levels in combination with the change in ER-positive breast cancer progression marker levels increases the predictive value of the method.

In certain embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprise comparing the detected level of the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers in the biological samples with one or more control samples wherein the control sample is one or more of a sample from the same subject at an earlier time point than the biological sample, a sample from a subject treated for ER-positive breast cancer who has not progressed after a period of time, a sample from a subject with non-cancerous breast lump, a sample from a subject with non-metastatic breast cancer, a sample from a subject with metastatic breast cancer, a sample from a subject with ER-positive breast cancer, a sample from a subject with ER-negative breast cancer, a sample from a subject with aggressive breast cancer, a sample obtained from a subject with non-aggressive breast cancer, a sample from a subject with untreated breast cancer, and a sample from a subject treated for breast cancer. Comparison of the marker levels in the biological samples with control samples from subjects with various normal and abnormal breast states facilitates the differentiation between the progression risk of various breast states including ER-positive breast cancer and ER-negative breast cancer.

In other embodiments, the present invention also involves the analysis and consideration of any clinical and/or patient-related health data, for example, data obtained from an Electronic Medical Record (*e.g.*, collection of electronic health information about individual patients or populations relating to various types of data, such as, demographics, medical history, medication and allergies, immunization status, laboratory test results, radiology images, vital signs, personal statistics like age and weight, and billing information).

In certain embodiments, the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprise selecting a subject wherein the subject is suspected of having breast cancer, a subject has been previously diagnosed with breast cancer and is suspected of having ER-

positive breast cancer, a subject has been previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer, the subject is concurrently diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer (ie., at the time of carrying out the methods provided herein), the subject has been previously treated for ER-positive breast cancer, or the subject has not yet been treated for ER-positive breast cancer.

5 In certain embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprise obtaining a biological sample from a subject wherein the subject is suspected of having breast cancer, a subject has been previously diagnosed with breast cancer and is suspected of having ER-positive breast cancer, the subject has been previously diagnosed with ER-positive breast cancer, the subject is concurrently diagnosed with ER-
10 positive breast cancer (i.e., at the time of carrying out the methods provided herein), the subject has been previously treated for ER-positive breast cancer, or the subject has not yet been treated for ER-positive breast cancer.

 In certain embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprising selecting a treatment regimen for the subject based on the level of the one
15 or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.

 In certain embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprising treating the subject with a regimen including one or more treatments selected from the group consisting of surgery (e.g., surgical resection of a breast tumor or a mastectomy), radiation, hormone therapy, antibody therapy, therapy with growth factors,
20 cytokines, and chemotherapy.

 In certain embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprise selecting the one or more specific treatment regimens for the subject based on the results of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein. In one embodiment, a treatment regimen known to be effective against breast cancer having the biomarker
25 signature detected in the subject/sample is selected for the subject. In certain embodiments, the treatment method is started, change, revised, or maintained based on the results from the prognostic or monitoring methods of the invention, e.g., when it is determined that the subject is at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression, when it is determined that the subject is responding to the treatment regimen, or when it is determined that the subject is not
30 responding to the treatment regimen, or when it is determined that the subject is insufficiently responding to the treatment regimen. In certain embodiments, the treatment method is changed based on the results from the prognostic or monitoring methods.

In certain other embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprise introducing one or more specific treatment regimens for the subject based on the results of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein. In one embodiment, a treatment regimen known to be effective against breast cancer progression having the
5 biomarker signature detected in the subject/sample is selected for the subject. In certain embodiments, the treatment method is started, change, revised, or maintained based on the results from the prognostic or monitoring methods of the invention, *e.g.*, when it is determined that the subject is at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression, when it is determined that the subject is responding to the treatment regimen, or when it is determined
10 that the subject is not responding to the treatment regimen, or when it is determined that the subject is insufficiently responding to the treatment regimen. In certain embodiments, the treatment method is changed based on the results from the prognostic or monitoring methods.

In yet other embodiments the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein further comprise the step of administering a therapeutically effective amount of an anti-
15 breast cancer therapy based on the results of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein. In one embodiment, a treatment regimen known to be effective against breast cancer progression is selected for the subject. In certain embodiments, the treatment method is administered based on the results from the prognostic or monitoring methods of the invention, *e.g.*, when it is determined that the subject is at risk for ER-positive breast cancer
20 progression, when it is determined that the subject expresses one or more biomarkers of the invention (*i.e.*, the one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers selected from Tables 1 and 2) above or below some threshold level that is indicative of breast cancer progression.

In certain embodiments, a change in the treatment regimen comprises changing a
25 hormone based therapy treatment. In certain embodiments, treatments for breast cancer and breast cancer progression include one or more of surgery (*e.g.*, surgical resection of a breast tumor or mastectomy), radiation, hormone therapy, antibody therapy, therapy with growth factors, cytokines, or chemotherapy based on the results of a method of the present invention for an interval prior to performing a subsequent prognostic, or monitoring method provided
30 herein.

In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method further comprises isolating a component of the biological sample.

In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method further comprises labeling a component of the biological sample.

In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method further comprises amplifying a component of a biological sample.

5 In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method comprises forming a complex with a probe and a component of a biological sample. In certain embodiments, forming a complex with a probe comprises forming a complex with at least one non-naturally occurring reagent. In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method comprises processing the
10 biological sample. In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method of detecting a level of at least two markers comprises a panel of markers. In certain embodiments of the prognostic and monitoring methods provided herein, the method of detecting a level comprises attaching the marker to be detected to a solid surface.

15 The invention provides methods of selecting for administration of certain treatment or against administration of certain treatment of breast cancer in a subject comprising: (1) detecting a level of a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in a first sample obtained from the subject having ER-positive breast cancer at a first time wherein the subject has not been treated for breast cancer, wherein the markers of ER-positive breast cancer
20 progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2; (2) detecting a level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in a second sample obtained from the subject at a second time, *e.g.*, wherein the subject is being treated for breast cancer; (3) comparing the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample with the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the second
25 sample; wherein selecting for administration of certain treatment or against administration of certain treatment after the second time is based on the presence or absence of changes in the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression between the first sample and the second sample.

 In certain embodiments, the method further comprising obtaining a third sample
30 obtained from the subject at a third time (*e.g.*, wherein the subject is being treated for breast cancer), detecting a level of a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the third sample, wherein the markers of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, and comparing the level of the marker of ER-positive

breast cancer progression in the third sample with the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample and/or the one or more markers in the second sample.

In certain embodiments, an increased or decreased level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the second sample as compared to the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample is an indication that the therapy is not efficacious in slowing down or preventing progression of breast cancer, wherein the markers of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.

In certain embodiments, an increased or decreased level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the second sample as compared to the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample is an indication for selecting another dosage for the current treatment or selecting a different treatment, wherein the markers of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.

In certain embodiments, the methods further comprise detecting the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the first sample and the second sample, and then preferably further comprising comparing the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the first sample with the level of the known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the second sample.

In certain embodiments, an increase or decrease in the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the second sample as compared to the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample in combination with an increase or decrease in the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the second sample as compared to the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the first sample has greater predictive value that the therapy is efficacious in slowing down or preventing breast cancer progression in the subject than analysis of a single marker alone.

In certain embodiments, an increase or decrease in the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the second sample as compared to the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the first sample in combination with an increase or decrease in the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the second sample as compared to the level of known prognostic markers of breast cancer in the first sample has greater predictive value for selecting a different treatment regimen for the subject than analysis of a single marker alone .

6. MONITORING CLINICAL TRIALS

Monitoring the influence of agents (*e.g.*, drug compounds) on the level of a marker of the invention can be applied not only in basic drug screening or monitoring the treatment of a single subject, but also in clinical trials. For example, the effectiveness of an agent to affect marker expression can be monitored in clinical trials of subjects receiving treatment for breast cancer. In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a method for monitoring the effectiveness of treatment of a subject with an agent (*e.g.*, an agonist, antagonist, peptidomimetic, protein, peptide, nucleic acid, small molecule, or other drug candidate) comprising the steps of (i) obtaining a pre-administration sample from a subject prior to administration of the agent; (ii) detecting the level of one or more selected markers of the invention in the pre-administration sample; (iii) obtaining one or more post-administration samples from the subject; (iv) detecting the level of the marker(s) in the post-administration samples; (v) comparing the level of the marker(s) in the pre-administration sample with the level of the marker(s) in the post-administration sample or samples; and (vi) altering the administration of the agent to the subject accordingly. For example, increased expression of the protein marker during the course of treatment may indicate ineffective dosage and the desirability of increasing the dosage. Conversely, decreased expression of the protein marker may indicate efficacious treatment and no need to change dosage.

H. TREATMENT/THERAPEUTICS

The present invention provides methods for treating and/or preventing disease states, *e.g.*, breast cancer progression in a subject, *e.g.*, a human, using one or more (*e.g.*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or more) markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof.

The present invention also provides methods for treating and/or preventing breast cancer progression with a therapeutic, *e.g.*, a modulator, that modulates (*e.g.*, reduces, or increases) the level of expression or activity of one or more (*e.g.*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or more) markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6,

WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof.

In certain embodiments, the modulator decreases the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, whose expression level is increased in a subject at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

In other embodiments, the modulator increases the level of the marker, *e.g.*, a marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression, whose expression level is decreased in a subject at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression.

The invention also provides methods for selection and/or administration of known treatment agents, especially hormone based therapies vs. non-hormone based therapies, and aggressive or active treatment vs. “watchful waiting”, depending on the detection of a change in the level of one or more (*e.g.*, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or more) markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, as compared to a control. The selection of treatment regimens can further include the detection of known prognostic markers of breast cancer to assist in selection of the therapeutic methods. Selection of treatment methods can also include other diagnostic considerations and patient characteristics including results from imaging studies, tumor size or growth rates, risk of poor outcomes, disruption of daily activities, and age, TNM classifications, cancer stage, clinical and/or patient-related health data (*e.g.*, data obtained from an Electronic Medical Record (*e.g.*, collection of electronic health information about individual patients or populations relating to various types of data, such as, demographics, medical history, medication and allergies, immunization status, laboratory test results, radiology images, vital signs, personal statistics like age and weight, and billing information)).

1. NUCLEIC ACID THERAPEUTICS

Nucleic acid therapeutics are well known in the art. Nucleic acid therapeutics include both single stranded and double stranded (*i.e.*, nucleic acid therapeutics having a complementary region of at least 15 nucleotides in length that may be one or two nucleic acid strands) nucleic acids that are complementary to a target sequence in a cell. Nucleic acid therapeutics can be delivered to a cell in culture, *e.g.*, by adding the nucleic acid to culture media either alone or with an agent to promote uptake of the nucleic acid into the cell. Nucleic acid therapeutics can be delivered to a cell in a subject, *i.e.*, in vivo, by any route of administration. The specific formulation will depend on the route of administration.

As used herein, and unless otherwise indicated, the term “complementary,” when used to describe a first nucleotide sequence in relation to a second nucleotide sequence, refers to the ability of an oligonucleotide or polynucleotide comprising the first nucleotide sequence to hybridize and form a duplex structure under certain conditions with an oligonucleotide or polynucleotide comprising the second nucleotide sequence, as will be understood by the skilled person. Such conditions can, for example, be stringent conditions, where stringent conditions may include: 400 mM NaCl, 40 mM PIPES pH 6.4, 1 mM EDTA, 50°C or 70°C for 12-16 hours followed by washing. Other conditions, such as physiologically relevant conditions as may be encountered inside an organism, can apply. The skilled person will be able to determine the set of conditions most appropriate for a test of complementarity of two sequences in accordance with the ultimate application of the hybridized nucleotides.

Sequences can be “fully complementary” with respect to each when there is base-pairing of the nucleotides of the first nucleotide sequence with the nucleotides of the second nucleotide sequence over the entire length of the first and second nucleotide sequences.

However, where a first sequence is referred to as “substantially complementary” with respect to a second sequence herein, the two sequences can be fully complementary, or they may form one or more, but generally not more than 4, 3 or 2 mismatched base pairs upon hybridization, while retaining the ability to hybridize under the conditions most relevant to their ultimate application. However, where two oligonucleotides are designed to form, upon hybridization, one or more single stranded overhangs as is common in double stranded nucleic acid therapeutics, such overhangs shall not be regarded as mismatches with regard to the determination of complementarity. For example, a dsRNA comprising one oligonucleotide 21 nucleotides in length and another oligonucleotide 23 nucleotides in length, wherein the longer oligonucleotide comprises a sequence of 21 nucleotides that is fully complementary to the shorter oligonucleotide, may yet be referred to as “fully complementary” for the purposes described herein.

“Complementary” sequences, as used herein, may also include, or be formed entirely from, non-Watson-Crick base pairs and/or base pairs formed from non-natural and modified nucleotides, in as far as the above requirements with respect to their ability to hybridize are fulfilled. Such non-Watson-Crick base pairs includes, but not limited to, G:U Wobble or Hoogsteen base pairing.

The terms “complementary,” “fully complementary”, and “substantially complementary” herein may be used with respect to the base matching between the sense

strand and the antisense strand of a dsRNA, or between an antisense nucleic acid or the antisense strand of dsRNA and a target sequence, as will be understood from the context of their use.

As used herein, a polynucleotide that is “substantially complementary to at least part of” a messenger RNA (mRNA) refers to a polynucleotide that is substantially complementary to a contiguous portion of the mRNA of interest including a 5' UTR, an open reading frame (ORF), or a 3' UTR. For example, a polynucleotide is complementary to at least a part of the mRNA corresponding to the protein markers of Table 1 or Table 2.

Nucleic acid therapeutics typically include chemical modifications to improve their stability and to modulate their pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties. For example, the modifications on the nucleotides can include, but are not limited to, LNA, HNA, CeNA, 2'-hydroxyl, and combinations thereof.

Nucleic acid therapeutics may further comprise at least one phosphorothioate or methylphosphonate internucleotide linkage. The phosphorothioate or methylphosphonate internucleotide linkage modification may occur on any nucleotide of the sense strand or antisense strand or both (in nucleic acid therapeutics including a sense strand) in any position of the strand. For instance, the internucleotide linkage modification may occur on every nucleotide on the sense strand or antisense strand; each internucleotide linkage modification may occur in an alternating pattern on the sense strand or antisense strand; or the sense strand or antisense strand may contain both internucleotide linkage modifications in an alternating pattern. The alternating pattern of the internucleotide linkage modification on the sense strand may be the same or different from the antisense strand, and the alternating pattern of the internucleotide linkage modification on the sense strand may have a shift relative to the alternating pattern of the internucleotide linkage modification on the antisense strand.

A. SINGLE STRANDED THERAPEUTICS

Antisense nucleic acid therapeutic agent single stranded nucleic acid therapeutics, typically about 16 to 30 nucleotides in length and are complementary to a target nucleic acid sequence in the target cell, either in culture or in an organism.

Patents directed to antisense nucleic acids, chemical modifications, and therapeutic uses are provided, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,898,031 related to chemically modified RNA-containing therapeutic compounds, and U.S. Patent No. 6,107,094 related methods of using these compounds as therapeutic agent. U.S. Patent No. 7,432,250 related to methods of treating patients by administering single-stranded chemically modified RNA-like compounds;

and U.S. Patent No. 7,432,249 related to pharmaceutical compositions containing single-stranded chemically modified RNA-like compounds. U.S. Patent No. 7,629,321 is related to methods of cleaving target mRNA using a single-stranded oligonucleotide having a plurality RNA nucleosides and at least one chemical modification. Each of the patents listed in the

5 paragraph are incorporated herein by reference.

B. DOUBLE STRANDED THERAPEUTICS

In many embodiments, the duplex region is 15-30 nucleotide pairs in length. In some embodiments, the duplex region is 17-23 nucleotide pairs in length, 17-25 nucleotide pairs in length, 23-27 nucleotide pairs in length, 19-21 nucleotide pairs in length, or 21-23 nucleotide

10 pairs in length.

In certain embodiments, each strand has 15-30 nucleotides.

The RNAi agents that are used in the methods of the invention include agents with chemical modifications as disclosed, for example, in Publications WO 2009/073809 and WO/2012/037254, the entire contents of each of which are incorporated herein by reference.

15 Nucleic acid therapeutic agents for use in the methods of the invention also include double stranded nucleic acid therapeutics. An “RNAi agent,” “double stranded RNAi agent,” double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) molecule, also referred to as “dsRNA agent,” “dsRNA”, “siRNA”, “iRNA agent,” as used interchangeably herein, refers to a complex of ribonucleic acid molecules, having a duplex structure comprising two anti-parallel and substantially

20 complementary, as defined below, nucleic acid strands. As used herein, an RNAi agent can also include dsRNA (see, *e.g.*, US Patent publication 20070104688, incorporated herein by reference). In general, the majority of nucleotides of each strand are ribonucleotides, but as described herein, each or both strands can also include one or more non-ribonucleotides, *e.g.*, a deoxyribonucleotide and/or a modified nucleotide. In addition, as used in this specification,

25 an “RNAi agent” may include ribonucleotides with chemical modifications; an RNAi agent may include substantial modifications at multiple nucleotides. Such modifications may include all types of modifications disclosed herein or known in the art. Any such modifications, as used in a siRNA type molecule, are encompassed by “RNAi agent” for the purposes of this specification and claims. The RNAi agents that are used in the methods of

30 the invention include agents with chemical modifications as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/561,710, filed on November 18, 2011, International Application No. PCT/US2011/051597, filed on September 15, 2010, and PCT Publication WO 2009/073809, the entire contents of each of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The two strands forming the duplex structure may be different portions of one larger RNA molecule, or they may be separate RNA molecules. Where the two strands are part of one larger molecule, and therefore are connected by an uninterrupted chain of nucleotides between the 3'-end of one strand and the 5'-end of the respective other strand forming the duplex structure, the connecting RNA chain is referred to as a "hairpin loop." Where the two strands are connected covalently by means other than an uninterrupted chain of nucleotides between the 3'-end of one strand and the 5'-end of the respective other strand forming the duplex structure, the connecting structure is referred to as a "linker." The RNA strands may have the same or a different number of nucleotides. The maximum number of base pairs is the number of nucleotides in the shortest strand of the dsRNA minus any overhangs that are present in the duplex. In addition to the duplex structure, an RNAi agent may comprise one or more nucleotide overhangs. The term "siRNA" is also used herein to refer to an RNAi agent as described above.

In another aspect, the agent is a single-stranded antisense RNA molecule. An antisense RNA molecule is complementary to a sequence within the target mRNA. Antisense RNA can inhibit translation in a stoichiometric manner by base pairing to the mRNA and physically obstructing the translation machinery, see Dias, N. *et al.*, (2002) *Mol Cancer Ther* 1:347-355. The antisense RNA molecule may have about 15-30 nucleotides that are complementary to the target mRNA. For example, the antisense RNA molecule may have a sequence of at least 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 or more contiguous nucleotides complementary to the mRNA sequences corresponding to the protein markers of Tables 1 and 2.

The term "antisense strand" refers to the strand of a double stranded RNAi agent which includes a region that is substantially complementary to a target sequence (*e.g.*, a human TTR mRNA). As used herein, the term "region complementary to part of an mRNA encoding transthyretin" refers to a region on the antisense strand that is substantially complementary to part of a TTR mRNA sequence. Where the region of complementarity is not fully complementary to the target sequence, the mismatches are most tolerated in the terminal regions and, if present, are generally in a terminal region or regions, *e.g.*, within 6, 5, 4, 3, or 2 nucleotides of the 5' and/or 3' terminus.

The term "sense strand," as used herein, refers to the strand of a dsRNA that includes a region that is substantially complementary to a region of the antisense strand.

The invention also includes molecular beacon nucleic acids having at least one region which is complementary to a nucleic acid of the invention, such that the molecular beacon is

useful for quantitating the presence of the nucleic acid of the invention in a sample. A "molecular beacon" nucleic acid is a nucleic acid comprising a pair of complementary regions and having a fluorophore and a fluorescent quencher associated therewith. The fluorophore and quencher are associated with different portions of the nucleic acid in such an orientation that when the complementary regions are annealed with one another, fluorescence of the fluorophore is quenched by the quencher. When the complementary regions of the nucleic acid are not annealed with one another, fluorescence of the fluorophore is quenched to a lesser degree. Molecular beacon nucleic acids are described, for example, in U.S. Patent 5,876,930.

10 I. DRUG SCREENING

As noted above, sets of markers whose expression levels correlate with one or more selected breast cancer characteristics (*e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer progression) are attractive targets for identification of new therapeutic agents via screens to detect compounds or entities that inhibit or enhance expression of these biomarker genes and/or their products.

15 Accordingly, the present invention provides methods for the identification of compounds potentially useful for modulating ER-positive breast cancer progression. In particular, the present invention provides methods for the identification of agents or compounds potentially useful for modulating ER-positive breast cancer progression, wherein the agents or compounds modulate (*e.g.*, increase or decrease) the expression and/or activity of one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example, ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof.

25 Such assays typically comprise a reaction between a marker of the invention and one or more assay components. The other components may be either the test compound itself, or a combination of test compounds and a natural binding partner of a marker of the invention. Compounds identified via assays such as those described herein may be useful, for example, for modulating, *e.g.*, inhibiting, ameliorating, treating, or preventing the disease. Compounds 30 identified for modulating the expression level of one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 are preferably further tested for activity useful in the treatment and/or prevention of breast cancer at risk of progression, particularly ER-positive breast cancer progression.

The test compounds used in the screening assays of the present invention may be obtained from any available source, including systematic libraries of natural and/or synthetic compounds. Test compounds may also be obtained by any of the numerous approaches in combinatorial library methods known in the art, including: biological libraries; peptoid
5 libraries (libraries of molecules having the functionalities of peptides, but with a novel, non-peptide backbone which are resistant to enzymatic degradation but which nevertheless remain bioactive; see, *e.g.*, Zuckermann *et al.*, 1994, *J. Med. Chem.* 37:2678-85); spatially addressable parallel solid phase or solution phase libraries; synthetic library methods requiring deconvolution; the 'one-bead one-compound' library method; and synthetic library
10 methods using affinity chromatography selection. The biological library and peptoid library approaches are limited to peptide libraries, while the other four approaches are applicable to peptide, non-peptide oligomer or small molecule libraries of compounds (Lam, 1997, *Anticancer Drug Des.* 12:145).

Examples of methods for the synthesis of molecular libraries can be found in the art,
15 for example in: DeWitt *et al.* (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 90:6909; Erb *et al.* (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:11422; Zuckermann *et al.* (1994). *J. Med. Chem.* 37:2678; Cho *et al.* (1993) *Science* 261:1303; Carrell *et al.* (1994) *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* 33:2059; Carell *et al.* (1994) *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* 33:2061; and in Gallop *et al.* (1994) *J. Med. Chem.* 37:1233.

20 Libraries of compounds may be presented in solution (*e.g.*, Houghten, 1992, *Biotechniques* 13:412-421), or on beads (Lam, 1991, *Nature* 354:82-84), chips (Fodor, 1993, *Nature* 364:555-556), bacteria and/or spores, (Ladner, USP 5,223,409), plasmids (Cull *et al.*, 1992, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 89:1865-1869) or on phage (Scott and Smith, 1990, *Science* 249:386-390; Devlin, 1990, *Science* 249:404-406; Cwirla *et al.*, 1990, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*
25 87:6378-6382; Felici, 1991, *J. Mol. Biol.* 222:301-310; Ladner, *supra.*).

The screening methods of the invention comprise contacting a cell, *e.g.*, a diseased cell, especially a breast cancer cell, such as an ER-positive breast cancer cell, with a test compound and determining the ability of the test compound to modulate the expression and/or activity of one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2 in the cell. The
30 screening methods of the invention also comprise contacting a cell, *e.g.*, a diseased cell, especially a breast cancer cell, such as an ER-positive breast cancer cell, with a test compound and determining the ability of the test compound to modulate the expression and/or activity of one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, for example,

ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, WDR26, ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, MTA2, or any combination thereof, in the cell. The expression and/or activity of one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, can be determined using any methods known in the art, such as those described herein.

In another embodiment, the invention provides assays for screening candidate or test compounds which are substrates of a marker of the invention or biologically active portions thereof. In yet another embodiment, the invention provides assays for screening candidate or test compounds which bind to a marker of the invention or biologically active portions thereof. Determining the ability of the test compound to directly bind to a marker can be accomplished, for example, by any method known in the art.

This invention further pertains to novel agents identified by the above-described screening assays. Accordingly, it is within the scope of this invention to further use an agent identified as described herein in an appropriate animal model. For example, an agent capable of modulating the expression and/or activity of a marker of the invention identified as described herein can be used in an animal model to determine the efficacy, toxicity, or side effects of treatment (*e.g.*, of ER-positive breast cancer) with such an agent. Alternatively, an agent identified as described herein can be used in an animal model to determine the mechanism of action of such an agent. Furthermore, this invention pertains to uses of novel agents identified by the above-described screening assays for treatment as described above.

In certain embodiments, the screening methods are performed using cells contained in a plurality of wells of a multi-well assay plate. Such assay plates are commercially available, for example, from Stratagene Corp. (La Jolla, Calif.) and Corning Inc. (Acton, Mass.) and include, for example, 48-well, 96-well, 384-well and 1536-well plates.

Reproducibility of the results may be tested by performing the analysis more than once with the same concentration of the same candidate compound (for example, by incubating cells in more than one well of an assay plate). Additionally, since candidate compounds may be effective at varying concentrations depending on the nature of the compound and the nature of its mechanism(s) of action, varying concentrations of the candidate compound may be tested. Generally, candidate compound concentrations from 1 fM to about 10 mM are used for screening. Preferred screening concentrations are generally between about 10 pM and about 100 μ M.

The screening methods of the invention will provide "hits" or "leads," *i.e.*, compounds that possess a desired but not optimized biological activity. Lead optimization performed on these compounds to fulfill all physicochemical, pharmacokinetic, and toxicologic factors required for clinical usefulness may provide improved drug candidates. The present invention
5 also encompasses these improved drug candidates and their use as therapeutics for modulating breast cancer progression.

J. KITS/PANELS

The invention also provides compositions and kits for prognosing or monitoring a disease or disorder, progression or recurrence of a disorder, or survival of a subject being
10 treated for a disorder (*e.g.*, ER-positive breast cancer, such as in particular, risk of progression of ER-positive breast cancer). These kits may include one or more of the following: a reagent that specifically binds to a marker of the invention, and a set of instructions for measuring the level of the marker.

The invention also encompasses kits for detecting the presence of a marker protein or
15 nucleic acid in a biological sample. Such kits can be used to determine if a subject has progressed or is at risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression. For example, the kit can comprise a labeled compound or agent capable of detecting a marker protein or nucleic acid in a biological sample and means for determining the amount of the protein or mRNA in the sample (*e.g.*, an antibody which binds the protein or a fragment thereof, or an oligonucleotide
20 probe which binds to DNA or mRNA encoding the protein). Kits can also include instructions for use of the kit for practicing any of the methods provided herein or interpreting the results obtained using the kit based on the teachings provided herein. The kits can also include reagents for detection of a control protein in the sample not related to the breast cancer, *e.g.*, actin for tissue samples, albumin in blood or blood derived samples for
25 normalization of the amount of the marker present in the sample. The kit can also include the purified marker for detection for use as a control or for quantitation of the assay performed with the kit.

Kits include a panel of reagents for use in a method to prognose a risk for ER-positive breast cancer progression in a subject (or to identify a subject whose ER-positive breast
30 cancer is progressing, etc.), the panel comprising at least two detection reagents, wherein each detection reagent is specific for one breast cancer progression-specific protein, wherein said ER-positive breast cancer progression-specific proteins are selected from the breast cancer progression-specific protein sets provided herein.

For antibody-based kits, the kit can comprise, for example: (1) a first antibody (*e.g.*, attached to a solid support) which binds to a first marker protein; and, optionally, (2) a second, different antibody which binds to either the first marker protein or the first antibody and is conjugated to a detectable label. In certain embodiments, the kit includes (1) a second antibody (*e.g.*, attached to a solid support) which binds to a second marker protein; and, optionally, (2) a second, different antibody which binds to either the second marker protein or the second antibody and is conjugated to a detectable label. The first and second marker proteins are different. In an embodiment, the first and second markers are markers of the invention, *e.g.*, one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2. In certain embodiments, neither the first marker nor the second marker is a known prognostic marker of breast cancer progression. In certain embodiments, the kit comprises a third antibody which binds to a third marker protein which is different from the first and second marker proteins, and a second different antibody that binds to either the third marker protein or the antibody that binds the third marker protein wherein the third marker protein is different from the first and second marker proteins.

For oligonucleotide-based kits, the kit can comprise, for example: (1) an oligonucleotide, *e.g.*, a detectably labeled oligonucleotide, which hybridizes to a nucleic acid sequence encoding a marker protein or (2) a pair of primers useful for amplifying a marker nucleic acid molecule. In certain embodiments, the kit can further include, for example: (1) an oligonucleotide, *e.g.*, a second detectably labeled oligonucleotide, which hybridizes to a nucleic acid sequence encoding a second marker protein or (2) a pair of primers useful for amplifying the second marker nucleic acid molecule. The first and second markers are different. In an embodiment, the first and second markers are markers of the invention, *e.g.*, one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2. In certain embodiments, the kit can further include, for example: (1) an oligonucleotide, *e.g.*, a third detectably labeled oligonucleotide, which hybridizes to a nucleic acid sequence encoding a third marker protein or (2) a pair of primers useful for amplifying the third marker nucleic acid molecule wherein the third marker is different from the first and second markers. In certain embodiments, the kit includes a third primer specific for each nucleic acid marker to allow for detection using quantitative PCR methods.

For chromatography methods, the kit can include markers, including labeled markers, to permit detection and identification of one or more markers of the invention, *e.g.*, one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, and optionally a known prognostic marker

of breast cancer progression, by chromatography. In certain embodiments, kits for chromatography methods include compounds for derivatization of one or more markers of the invention. In certain embodiments, kits for chromatography methods include columns for resolving the markers of the method.

5 Reagents specific for detection of a marker of the invention, *e.g.*, one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, allow for detection and quantitation of the marker in a complex mixture, *e.g.*, serum, tissue sample. In certain embodiments, the reagents are species specific. In certain embodiments, the reagents are not species specific. In certain
10 embodiments, the reagents are isoform specific. In certain embodiments, the reagents are not isoform specific.

 In certain embodiments, the kits for the prognosis, monitoring, or characterization of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprise at least one reagent specific for the detection of the level of one or more of the markers selected from Tables 1 and 2. In certain
15 embodiments, the kits further comprise instructions for the prognosis, monitoring, or characterization of ER-positive breast cancer progression based on the level of the at least one marker selected from Tables 1 and 2. In certain embodiments, the kits further comprise instructions to detect the level of a known prognostic marker of breast cancer in a sample in which the at least one marker selected from Tables 1 and 2 is detected. In certain
20 embodiments, the kits further comprise at least one reagent for the specific detection of a known prognostic marker of breast cancer.

 The invention provides kits comprising at least one reagent specific for the detection of a level of at least one marker selected from Tables 1 and 2 and at least one reagent specific for the detection of a level of a known prognostic marker of breast cancer.

 In certain embodiments, the kits can also comprise, *e.g.*, a buffering agents, a
25 preservative, a protein stabilizing agent, reaction buffers. The kit can further comprise components necessary for detecting the detectable label (*e.g.*, an enzyme or a substrate). The kit can also contain a control sample or a series of control samples which can be assayed and compared to the test sample. The controls can be control serum samples or control samples of purified proteins or nucleic acids, as appropriate, with known levels of target markers.
30 Each component of the kit can be enclosed within an individual container and all of the various containers can be within a single package, along with instructions for interpreting the results of the assays performed using the kit.

The kits of the invention may optionally comprise additional components useful for performing the methods of the invention.

The invention further provides panels of reagents for detection of one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression-related marker in a subject sample and at least one control reagent. In certain embodiments, the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from the protein markers set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

In certain embodiments, the control reagent is to detect the marker for detection in the biological sample wherein the panel is provided with a control sample containing the marker for use as a positive control and optionally to quantitate the amount of marker present in the biological sample. In certain embodiments, the panel includes a detection reagent for a marker not related to ER-positive breast cancer progression that is known to be present or absent in the biological sample to provide a positive or negative control, respectively. The panel can be provided with reagents for detection of a control protein in the sample not related to ER-positive breast cancer progression, *e.g.*, actin for tissue samples, albumin in blood or blood derived samples for normalization of the amount of the marker present in the sample. The panel can be provided with a purified marker for detection for use as a control or for quantitation of the assay performed with the panel.

In certain embodiments, the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the panel is increased when compared to a control or a predetermined threshold value. In certain embodiments, the level of the marker of ER-positive breast cancer progression in the panel is decreased when compared to a control or a predetermined threshold value.

In some embodiments, the panel comprises one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers with an increased level when compared to a control or a predetermined threshold value, and/or one or more ER-positive breast cancer progression markers with a decreased level when compared to a control or a predetermined threshold value.

In a preferred embodiment, the panel includes reagents for detection of two or more markers of the invention (*e.g.*, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9), preferably in conjunction with a control reagent. In the panel, each marker is detected by a reagent specific for that marker. In certain embodiments, the panel further includes a reagent for the detection of a known prognostic marker of breast cancer. In certain embodiments, the panel includes replicate wells, spots, or portions to allow for analysis of various dilutions (*e.g.*, serial dilutions) of biological samples

and control samples. In a preferred embodiment, the panel allows for quantitative detection of one or more markers of the invention.

In certain embodiments, the panel is a protein chip for detection of one or more markers. In certain embodiments, the panel is an ELISA plate for detection of one or more markers. In certain embodiments, the panel is a plate for quantitative PCR for detection of one or more markers.

In certain embodiments, the panel of detection reagents is provided on a single device including a detection reagent for one or more markers of the invention and at least one control sample. In certain embodiments, the panel of detection reagents is provided on a single device including a detection reagent for two or more markers of the invention and at least one control sample. In certain embodiments, multiple panels for the detection of different markers of the invention are provided with at least one uniform control sample to facilitate comparison of results between panels.

The contents of all documents cited or referenced herein and all documents cited or referenced in the herein cited documents, together with any manufacturer's instructions, descriptions, product specifications, and product sheets for any products mentioned herein or in any document incorporated by reference herein, GenBank Accession and Gene numbers, and published patents and patent applications, are hereby incorporated by reference, and may be employed in the practice of the invention. Those skilled in the art will recognize that the invention may be practiced with variations on the disclosed structures, materials, compositions and methods, and such variations are regarded as within the ambit of the invention.

This invention is further illustrated by the following examples which should not be construed as limiting.

EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE 1: Proteomics Analysis - Identification of Proteins as Markers of ER-Positive Progressors

The present example describe analyses to determine biomarkers for the prognosis of ER-positive breast cancer progression.

Breast tissue proteomics was assessed for 27 non-progressors and 9 progressors with medical background described in **Figures 1A-1B**. Briefly, these patients were diagnosed with ER+ and luminal B1 breast cancer, and all the patients received treatment (*e.g.*, surgical

resection) after diagnosis. Non-progressors had no breast cancer recurrence for at least 3 years from. The progressors had at least one adverse event among: recurrence, metastasis, lymph node positive/stage increase and/or death. Breast tumor tissues were taken from patients at the time of biopsy collection for diagnosis and snap frozen. Biomarkers were
5 analyzed using an ensemble of methods for screening and selecting the best discriminators of ER-positive breastcancer progressors.

Tissues were lysed using 7M urea, 2M thiourea, 1% Halt Protease and Phosphatase Inhibitor cocktail and 0.1% SDS, followed by sonication. After lysis, samples were centrifuged, and supernatant was used for proteomics analysis. The protein concentration was
10 determined using Coomassie Bradford Protein Assay Kit.

Proteins were reduced in 10 mM Tris(2-carboxyethyl) Phosphine (TCEP) for 30 min at 55°C and alkylated in 18.75 mM iodoacetamide for 30 min at room temperature in the dark. Proteins were precipitated overnight using acetone. Protein pellets were reconstituted in 200 mM tetraethylammonium bicarbonate (TEAB) and digested with trypsin at 1:40
15 (trypsin:protein) overnight at 37°C. Peptides were then labeled with Tandem Mass Tag (TMT) 10-plex isobaric label reagent set (Thermo Pierce) using manufacturer's protocol. Labeling reaction was quenched with 5% hydroxylamine for 15 min before being combined into each respective multi-plex (MP). Pooled samples were dried in a vacuum centrifuge followed by desalting using C-18 spin columns (Thermo Pierce). The eluate from C-18 was
20 dried in a vacuum centrifuge and stored at -20°C until LC-MS/MS analysis.

LC-MS/MS analysis was performed using a Waters nanoAcquity 2D LC system coupled to a Thermo Q Exactive Plus MS. TMT-labeled samples were fractionated online into 12 basic reverse phase fractions. Each fraction was subjected to 90 min reverse phase separation. Data-dependent Top-15 acquisition method was used for MS analysis. Parameters
25 used for Q-Exactive plus were full MS survey scans at 35,000 resolution, scan range of 400-1800 Thompsons (Th; Th = Da/z). MS/MS scans were collected at a resolution of 35,000 with a 1.2 Th isolation window. Only peptides with charge +2, +3, and +4 were fragmented with a dynamic exclusion of 30 sec.

Raw LC-MS/MS data were then processed using Proteome Discoverer v1.4 (Thermo) by
30 searching a Swissport Mouse database (Swissprot 20 July 2016, 16794 entities) using the following parameters for both MASCOT and Sequest search algorithms: tryptic peptides with at least six amino acids in length and up to two missed cleavage sites, precursor mass tolerance of 10 ppm, fragment mass tolerance of 0.02 Da; static modifications: cysteine

carbamidomethylation, N-terminal TMT10-plex; and dynamic modifications: asparagine and glutamine deamidation, methionine oxidation, and lysine TMT10-plex.

Table 1 is a summary table for the top 148 detected proteomics markers that were differential between progressors and non-progressors. As shown in **Figure 2**, the 148 significantly differential proteins were selected at $|\log_2FC| > 0.58$ (*i.e.* $|FC| > 1.5$) and P-value < 0.05 . 80 proteins were down-regulated and 68 proteins were up-regulated in the progressors compared to the non-progressors.

Table 1: Protein Markers Indicative of ER-Positive Breast Cancer Progressors

Definition	Genes	logFC (event/no_event)	P.Value
glutathione S-transferase theta 1	GSTT1	-2.64711375	0.012904163
acyl-CoA synthetase short-chain family member 3	ACSS3	-2.304163228	0.023837912
matrix Gla protein	MGP	-2.303080039	0.03496448
folate receptor beta	FOLR2	-2.050021891	0.02799151
ferredoxin reductase	FDXR	-1.746481827	0.010767246
fucosidase, alpha-L- 2	FUCA2	-1.585144663	0.010776171
lymphocyte-specific protein 1	LSP1	-1.579618936	0.046073126
prostaglandin D2 synthase	PTGDS	-1.571767811	0.044287882
protein kinase C beta	PRKCB	-1.567946423	0.040503025
methyltransferase like 7A	METTL7A	-1.530916042	0.025229058
hematopoietic cell-specific Lyn substrate 1	HCLS1	-1.501101653	0.040864023
glutathione S-transferase zeta 1	GSTZ1	-1.48113045	0.004938411
high mobility group AT-hook 1	HMGA1	-1.442662906	0.045168723
Rho GTPase activating protein 25	ARHGAP25	-1.403818912	0.025193237
thiopurine S-methyltransferase	TPMT	-1.320263231	0.029063939
dedicator of cytokinesis 2	DOCK2	-1.311204657	0.035083141
galectin 9	LGALS9	-1.27192976	0.009863642
abhydrolase domain containing 14B	ABHD14B	-1.264351814	0.008296484
acyl-CoA synthetase family member 2	ACSF2	-1.255892363	0.035980934
src kinase associated phosphoprotein 2	SKAP2	-1.240234198	0.023482502

ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neuronal 5	CLN5	-1.239957176	0.041388616
legumain	LGMN	-1.219320935	0.010674208
ABRA C-terminal like	ABRACL	-1.217681571	0.012915143
cathepsin H	CTSH	-1.205131464	0.033717017
choline dehydrogenase	CHDH	-1.182052931	0.041442837
aldehyde dehydrogenase 6 family member A1	ALDH6A1	-1.173855873	0.028447414
cathepsin S	CTSS	-1.171097947	0.035088452
histidine triad nucleotide binding protein 2	HINT2	-1.170088396	0.022157296
carboxypeptidase D	CPD	-1.164074845	0.03608033
engulfment and cell motility 1	ELMO1	-1.132039054	0.049829414
DEF6, guanine nucleotide exchange factor	DEF6	-1.110867122	0.043466933
mitochondrial ribosomal protein L12	MRPL12	-1.110584909	0.034465187
isovaleryl-CoA dehydrogenase	IVD	-1.103541261	0.01176425
signal transducer and activator of transcription 5A	STAT5A	-1.053125862	0.011612532
WW domain binding protein 2	WBP2	-1.037987567	0.041391587
threonine synthase like 1	THNSL1	-1.035831202	0.01516603
dyncin light chain LC8-type 2	DYNLL2	-1.015721732	0.03147271
integrin subunit alpha 3	ITGA3	-1.014368394	0.036060516
schlafen family member 5	SLFN5	-0.999270816	0.034850609
dedicator of cytokinesis 8	DOCK8	-0.990438069	0.044923698
peptidyl-tRNA hydrolase domain containing 1	PTRHD1	-0.990218086	0.005368188
fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase domain containing 2A	FAHD2A	-0.984030573	0.002383587
pyrophosphatase (inorganic) 1	PPA1	-0.962208197	0.028474309
hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase/3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase/enoyl-CoA hydratase (trifunctional protein), beta subunit	HADHB	-0.952276154	0.010224012
glyoxalase domain containing 4	GLOD4	-0.92318896	0.033579523
dipeptidyl peptidase 3	DPP3	-0.915448362	0.020913002

pyrophosphatase (inorganic) 2	PPA2	-0.903782231	0.03048384
5', 3'-nucleotidase, cytosolic	NT5C	-0.892817298	0.017345449
IST1, ESCRT-III associated factor	IST1	-0.870688861	0.001385749
Rac/Cdc42 guanine nucleotide exchange factor 6	ARHGEF6	-0.868701451	0.04634955
DEAD-box helicase 5	DDX5	-0.862327017	0.022571851
chromosome 11 open reading frame 98	C11orf98	-0.859663713	0.023259597
ES1 protein homolog, mitochondrial	LOC102724023	-0.84308125	0.038613496
G elongation factor mitochondrial 2	GFM2	-0.840842752	0.00782739
cytochrome c oxidase subunit 5A	COX5A	-0.819054711	0.023860712
adenylate kinase 3	AK3	-0.815883048	0.024446571
inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptor type 1	ITPR1	-0.814030033	0.045506944
G protein subunit alpha 13	GNA13	-0.799309922	0.005743728
ATP synthase, H ⁺ transporting, mitochondrial Fo complex subunit D	ATP5H	-0.792198487	0.010363278
GIPC PDZ domain containing family member 1	GIPC1	-0.777633557	0.011768479
glutamate-cysteine ligase catalytic subunit	GCLC	-0.76691691	0.034896692
valosin containing protein	VCP	-0.760405484	0.008506622
N-acetyl-alpha-glucosaminidase	NAGLU	-0.760264488	0.028311782
ATP synthase, H ⁺ transporting, mitochondrial Fo complex subunit F6	ATP5J	-0.753767893	0.021529844
hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase/3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase/enoyl-CoA hydratase (trifunctional protein), alpha subunit	HADHA	-0.737569171	0.04567506
vacuolar protein sorting 4 homolog A	VPS4A	-0.734176457	0.017048653
UBX domain protein 1	UBXN1	-0.711452698	0.018677257
pitrilysin metalloproteinase 1	PITRM1	-0.685934675	0.04062905
chromosome X open reading frame 38	CXorf38	-0.685868271	0.045213659
ubiquitin like domain containing CTD phosphatase 1	UBLCP1	-0.661666019	0.045128627
SNU13 homolog, small nuclear ribonucleoprotein	SNU13	-0.659478689	0.029276895

2',3'-cyclic nucleotide 3' phosphodiesterase	CNP	-0.657217555	0.025270434
microtubule associated monooxygenase, calponin and LIM domain containing 1	MICAL1	-0.646044608	0.025768528
cytochrome c oxidase subunit 6B1	COX6B1	-0.639351951	0.049833202
EH domain containing 4	EHD4	-0.637572158	0.01337127
TANK binding kinase 1	TBK1	-0.630927904	0.02965368
NOC3 like DNA replication regulator	NOC3L	-0.618765052	0.02926186
ATP synthase, H ⁺ transporting, mitochondrial Fo complex subunit B1	ATP5F1	-0.611229782	0.038259261
GIT ArfGAP 1	GIT1	-0.595879296	0.030844675
metastasis associated 1 family member 2	MTA2	-0.587128009	0.006304833
ribosomal protein L22	RPL22	0.580403924	0.046707378
mitochondrial fission factor	MFF	0.590351413	0.045753392
death domain associated protein	DAXX	0.596617085	0.047124612
RNA binding motif protein 15	RBM15	0.613839978	0.034655287
WD repeat domain 26	WDR26	0.621074809	0.043367775
craniofacial development protein 1	CFDP1	0.624595183	0.044278391
importin 9	IPO9	0.633525824	0.043309875
5'-nucleotidase domain containing 2	NT5DC2	0.642807227	0.025925724
eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4 gamma 3	EIF4G3	0.663719524	0.027809174
tubulin folding cofactor E	TBCE	0.679479782	0.042243913
aladin WD repeat nucleoporin	AAAS	0.67962744	0.003767199
PHD finger protein 14	PHF14	0.68207057	0.015709542
nascent polypeptide-associated complex alpha subunit	NACA	0.720049539	0.025366648
protein kinase C iota	PRKCI	0.730059464	0.035014709
ubiquitin family domain containing 1	UBFD1	0.763138968	0.021131445
sperm antigen with calponin homology and coiled-coil domains 1	SPECC1	0.781457721	0.040331585
guanylate kinase 1	GUK1	0.793224264	0.011804199
SHOC2, leucine rich repeat scaffold protein	SHOC2	0.810603803	0.042912735

WD repeat domain 45B	WDR45B	0.81180198	0.014205032
NudC domain containing 3	NUDCD3	0.825271152	0.005367489
phosphatidylinositol transfer protein beta	PITPNB	0.827501437	0.003226226
disco interacting protein 2 homolog B	DIP2B	0.82939633	0.024037862
procollagen-lysine,2-oxoglutarate 5-dioxygenase 1	PLOD1	0.830648959	0.044280201
ribonuclease T2	RNASET2	0.832495775	0.022373459
AKT serine/threonine kinase 1	AKT1	0.835123233	0.037727467
ubiquitin A-52 residue ribosomal protein fusion product 1	UBA52	0.837324413	0.032658163
metadherin	MTDH	0.868583854	0.02634633
SBDS ribosome assembly guanine nucleotide exchange factor	SBDS	0.897197187	0.00096587
eukaryotic translation elongation factor 1 delta	EEF1D	0.897825567	0.001729293
nuclear casein kinase and cyclin dependent kinase substrate 1	NUCKS1	0.902082962	0.042160616
microtubule associated protein 4	MAP4	0.904557538	0.025886825
Sad1 and UNC84 domain containing 1	SUN1	0.924437059	0.002387532
suppression of tumorigenicity 13 (colon carcinoma) (HSP70 interacting protein)	ST13	0.93308984	0.025880884
PPFIA binding protein 1	PPFIBP1	0.939009541	0.016495087
purine rich element binding protein B	PURB	0.973793703	0.004500445
thyroid hormone receptor interactor 4	TRIP4	0.978938161	0.045525275
fibronectin type III domain containing 1	FNDC1	0.995636666	0.049441562
ATP binding cassette subfamily D member 3	ABCD3	1.018072864	0.034800605
disco interacting protein 2 homolog C	DIP2C	1.019578803	0.024973357
ATPase plasma membrane Ca ²⁺ transporting 4	ATP2B4	1.020000921	0.000402511
regulator of chromosome condensation 1	RCC1	1.024395095	0.011410691
glypican 1	GPC1	1.036314927	0.03809563
centromere protein B	CENPB	1.092144706	0.004046843
tubulin tyrosine ligase like 12	TTLL12	1.099673886	0.02563566

branched chain ketoacid dehydrogenase kinase	BCKDK	1.11474108	0.03800136
nuclear VCP-like	NVL	1.125085709	0.00144709
basic leucine zipper and W2 domains 2	BZW2	1.14573963	0.019031904
La ribonucleoprotein domain family member 4	LARP4	1.217667625	0.01367369
keratin 9	KRT9	1.225707552	0.007099179
four and a half LIM domains 3	FHL3	1.232875777	0.044908516
frizzled class receptor 1	FZD1	1.239374041	0.029871676
phospholipid scramblase 3	PLSCR3	1.252298576	0.011008047
solute carrier family 30 member 1	SLC30A1	1.252665025	0.032955697
procollagen-lysine,2-oxoglutarate 5-dioxygenase 2	PLOD2	1.41804098	0.027621193
saccharopine dehydrogenase	SCCPDH	1.433243678	0.021079446
collagen type V alpha 1 chain	COL5A1	1.434153435	0.035314879
chromosome 1 open reading frame 198	C1orf198	1.480036741	0.002365888
plastin 3	PLS3	1.48107119	0.036936336
lipopolysaccharide binding protein	LBP	1.486415892	0.031847237
acyl-CoA thioesterase 8	ACOT8	1.509131319	0.022573152
LDL receptor related protein 2	LRP2	1.562263939	0.037265443
aldolase, fructose-bisphosphate A	ALDOA	1.579737906	0.000270748
folliculin like 1	FSTL1	1.663049612	0.006367661
CAP, adenylyl cyclase-associated protein, 2 (yeast)	CAP2	1.909325886	0.023472173
syndecan 2	SDC2	1.919853756	0.024045014
programmed cell death 4 (neoplastic transformation inhibitor)	PDCD4	1.997920947	0.020802562
thrombospondin 1	THBS1	2.393169043	0.044438666
calbindin 2	CALB2	2.476943292	0.021489526

Principal component analysis (PCA) of the 148 significantly differential proteins listed in Table 1 showed clear separation between progressors and non-progressors along PC1 (see **Figure 3**). Clustering analysis of these 148 proteins also yielded clear clusters of progressors and non-progressors (see **Figure 4**)

KEGG pathway analysis of the 148 significantly differential proteins showed several pathways to which the differential proteins are connected. Exemplary pathways included the cancer proteoglycans pathway, oxidative phosphorylation pathway, valine/leucine/isoleucine degradation pathway and lysosome pathway. Significantly differential proteins belonging to these pathways are listed (under their gene names) in **Figure 5**.

Univariate analysis of the 148 differential proteins for disease-free survival outcome resulted in 41 significant proteins, among which 27 proteins were down-regulated and 14 proteins were up-regulated in the progressors compared to the non-progressors (**Figure 6**).

These data indicate that one or more of the protein markers identified in Table 1 may be used as biomarkers for the identification of ER-positive breast cancer progressors.

EXAMPLE 2: Identification of a refined gene panel indicative of ER-positive progressors

Table 2 is a list of 31 proteins selected from Table 1 that had gene-protein correlated to data in the Clinical Proteomic Analysis Consortium (CPTAC) and the Cancer Genome Atlas Program (TCGA), and exhibited differences in survival analysis identified by TCGA. The method of analysis used to select the proteins provided in Table 2 can be found, for example, in Tang *et al.*, 2018, *Genome Medicine* 10:94, the entire contents of which is incorporated herein by reference.

Table 2.

GeneName	Genes	Gene ID	logFC (event/no_event)	P.Value
acyl-CoA synthetase short-chain family member 3	ACSS3	79611	-2.304163228	0.023837912
ferredoxin reductase	FDXR	2232	-1.746481827	0.010767246
methyltransferase like 7A	METTL7A	25840	-1.530916042	0.025229058
glutathione S-transferase zeta 1	GSTZ1	2954	-1.48113045	0.004938411
thiopurine S-methyltransferase	TPMT	7172	-1.320263231	0.029063939
abhydrolase domain containing 14B	ABHD14B	84836	-1.264351814	0.008296484
acyl-CoA synthetase family member 2	ACSF2	80221	-1.255892363	0.035980934
histidine triad nucleotide binding protein 2	HINT2	84681	-1.170088396	0.022157296

carboxypeptidase D	CPD	1362	-1.164074845	0.03608033
DEF6, guanine nucleotide exchange factor	DEF6	50619	-1.110867122	0.043466933
WW domain binding protein 2	WBP2	23558	-1.037987567	0.041391587
threonine synthase like 1	THNSL1	79896	-1.035831202	0.01516603
dynein light chain LC8-type 2	DYNLL2	140735	-1.015721732	0.03147271
peptidyl-tRNA hydrolase domain containing 1	PTRHD1	391356	-0.990218086	0.005368188
fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase domain containing 2A	FAHD2A	51011	-0.984030573	0.002383587
glyoxalase domain containing 4	GLOD4	51031	-0.92318896	0.033579523
5', 3'-nucleotidase, cytosolic	NT5C	30833	-0.892817298	0.017345449
IST1, ESCRT-III associated factor	IST1	9798	-0.870688861	0.001385749
G protein subunit alpha 13	GNA13	10672	-0.799309922	0.005743728
N-acetyl-alpha-glucosaminidase	NAGLU	4669	-0.760264488	0.028311782
vacuolar protein sorting 4 homolog A	VPS4A	27183	-0.734176457	0.017048653
metastasis associated 1 family member 2	MTA2	9219	-0.587128009	0.006304833
WD repeat domain 26	WDR26	80232	0.621074809	0.043367775
tubulin folding cofactor E	TBCE	6905	0.679479782	0.042243913
phosphatidylinositol transfer protein beta	PITPNB	23760	0.827501437	0.003226226
disco interacting protein 2 homolog B	DIP2B	57609	0.82939633	0.024037862
microtubule associated protein 4	MAP4	4134	0.904557538	0.025886825
purine rich element binding protein B	PURB	5814	0.973793703	0.004500445
chromosome 1 open reading frame 198	C1ORF198	84886	1.480036741	0.002365888
lipopolysaccharide binding protein	LBP	3929	1.486415892	0.031847237
aldolase, fructose-bisphosphate A	ALDOA	226	1.579737906	0.000270748

EQUIVALENTS

Those skilled in the art will recognize, or be able to ascertain using no more than
5 routine experimentation, many equivalents to the specific embodiments and methods

described herein. Such equivalents are intended to be encompassed by the scope of the following claims.

It is understood that the detailed examples and embodiments described herein are given by way of example for illustrative purposes only, and are in no way considered to be limiting to the invention. Various modifications or changes in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are included within the spirit and purview of this application and are considered within the scope of the appended claims. For example, the relative quantities of the ingredients may be varied to optimize the desired effects, additional ingredients may be added, and/or similar ingredients may be substituted for one or more of the ingredients described. Additional advantageous features and functionalities associated with the systems, methods, and processes of the present invention will be apparent from the appended claims. Moreover, those skilled in the art will recognize, or be able to ascertain using no more than routine experimentation, many equivalents to the specific embodiments of the invention described herein. Such equivalents are intended to be encompassed by the following claims.

We claim:

1. A method for prognosing the risk for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression in a subject, comprising:

(a) detecting the level of a breast cancer marker in a biological sample from the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2; and

(b) comparing the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample with a predetermined threshold value;

wherein the level of the breast cancer marker above or below the predetermined threshold value indicates that the subject is at risk for progression of ER positive breast cancer.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject has been previously diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

3. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is concurrently diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

4. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject has been previously treated for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

5. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject has not yet been treated for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

6. The method of any of claims 1-5, wherein the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

7. The method of any of the preceding claims, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises recurrence of the breast cancer in the subject.

8. The method of claim 7, wherein recurrence of the breast cancer is in the breast.

9. The method of claim 7, wherein recurrence of the breast cancer is in a location other than the breast.

10. The method of any of claims 1-6, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises metastasis of the breast cancer in the subject.

11. The method of any of claims 1-6, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises tumor growth.

5 12. The method of any of the preceding claims, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast tissue sample or a breast tumor tissue sample.

13. The method of any of claims 1-11, wherein the biological sample comprises circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumor cells in bone marrow or exosomes and/or breast ductal fluid exudent.

10 14. The method of any of the preceding claims, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from one or any combination of the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

15 15. The method of claim 1, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, and/or one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

16. The method of claim 15, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers
 20 in Table 1, comprising CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB,
 25 NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22.

17. The method of claim 15, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers

in Table 2, comprising ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26.

18. The method of claim 15, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the

subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 1, comprising GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2.

19. The method of claim 15, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2.

20. The method of any of the preceding claims, wherein the level of the breast cancer marker is detected by one or more of HPLC/UV-Vis spectroscopy, enzymatic analysis, mass spectrometry, NMR, immunoassay, ELISA, chromatography, or any combination thereof, or by determining the level of its corresponding mRNA in the biological sample.

21. The method of any of the preceding claims, further comprising selecting a treatment regimen based on the risk of progression of breast cancer in the subject.

22. The method of claim 21, wherein the treatment regimen comprises further monitoring of the subject for progression of breast cancer.

23. The method of claim 21, wherein the treatment regimen is selected from the group consisting of (a) radiation therapy, (b) chemotherapy, (c) surgery, (d) hormone therapy, (e)

antibody therapy, (f) immunotherapy, (g) cytokine therapy, (h) growth factor therapy, (i) watchful waiting, and (i) any combination of (a)-(i).

24. The method of claim 1, further comprising obtaining a biological sample from the subject.

5 25. The method of claim 24, wherein the subject has been previously diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

26. The method of claim 25, wherein the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

10 27. The method of claim 24, wherein the subject has not yet been diagnosed as having estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

28. The method of claim 24, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from a tumor biopsy.

29. The method of claim 24, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from resection of a breast cancer tumor.

15 30. The method of claim 24, wherein the biological sample comprises circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumor cells in bone marrow or exosomes and/or breast ductal fluid exudent.

20 31. A method for prognosing the risk for estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression in a subject, wherein the risk for progression is determined concurrently with the diagnosis of estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer in the subject, comprising:

(a) diagnosing ER positive breast cancer in the subject;

(b) detecting the level of a breast cancer marker in a biological sample from the subject, wherein the breast cancer comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2; and

25 (c) comparing the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample with a predetermined threshold value;

wherein the level of the breast cancer marker above or below the predetermined threshold value indicates that the subject is at an increased risk for ER positive breast cancer progression.

32. The method of claim 31, wherein the ER positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast
5 cancer

33. The method of claim 31, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises recurrence of the breast cancer in the subject.

34. The method of claim 33, wherein recurrence of the breast cancer is in the breast.

35. The method of claim 33, wherein recurrence of the breast cancer is in a location other
10 than the breast.

36. The method of claim 31, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises metastasis of the breast cancer in the subject.

37. The method of claim 31, wherein estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression comprises tumor growth.

15 38. The method of any of claims 31-37, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast tissue sample or a breast tumor tissue sample.

39. The method of any of claims 31-38, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from one or any combination of the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.

20 40. The method of claim 39, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, and/or one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject.

25 41. The method of claim 40, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 1, comprising CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2,

ACOT8, LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3, NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, RPL22.

42. The method of claim 40, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26.

43. The method of claim 35, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 1, comprising GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9, ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1, CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2.

44. The method of claim 35, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2, HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA2.

45. The method of any one of claims 31-44, wherein the level of the breast cancer marker is detected by one or more of HPLC/UV-Vis spectroscopy, enzymatic analysis, mass

spectrometry, NMR, immunoassay, ELISA, chromatography, or any combination thereof, or by determining the level of its corresponding mRNA in the biological sample.

46. The method of claims 31-45, further comprising selecting a treatment regimen based on the risk of progression of breast cancer in the subject.

5 47. The method of claim 46, wherein the treatment regimen comprises further monitoring of the subject for breast cancer progression.

48. The method of claim 46, wherein the treatment regimen is selected from the group consisting of (a) radiation therapy, (b) chemotherapy, (c) surgery, (d) hormone therapy, (e) antibody therapy, (f) immunotherapy, (g) cytokine therapy, (h) growth factor therapy, (i) watchful waiting, and (i) any combination of (a)-(i).

10

49. The method of any one of claims 31-48, further comprising obtaining a biological sample from the subject diagnosed as having ER positive breast cancer.

50. The method of claim 49, wherein the subject has been previously diagnosed with estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

15 51. The method of claim 50, wherein the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

52. The method of claim 49, wherein the subject has not yet been diagnosed as having estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer.

53. The method of claim 49, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from a tumor biopsy.

20

54. The method of claim 49, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast cancer tumor sample obtained from resection of a breast cancer tumor.

55. The method of claim 49, wherein the biological sample comprises circulating tumor cells or disseminated tumor cells in bone marrow or exosomes and/or breast ductal fluid exudent.

25

56. A method for monitoring estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer progression in a subject, the method comprising:

(1) detecting the level of a breast cancer marker in a first biological sample obtained at a first time from the subject having ER positive breast cancer, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2;

5 (2) detecting the level of the breast cancer marker in a second biological sample obtained from the subject at a second time, wherein the second time is later than the first time; and

(3) comparing the level of the breast cancer marker in the second sample with the level of the breast cancer marker in the first sample;

10 wherein a change in the level of the breast cancer marker is indicative of progression of ER positive breast cancer in the subject.

57. The method of claim 56, wherein the ER positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

15 58. A method for determining a change in estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer status in a subject, the method comprising monitoring breast cancer progression in the subject according to the method of claim 56, wherein a difference between the first detected level and the second detected level indicates a change in breast cancer status in the subject.

59. The method of claim 58, wherein the biological sample comprises a breast tissue sample or a breast tumor tissue sample.

20 60. The method of claim 58, wherein the subject is treated for breast cancer prior to obtaining the second sample.

61. A method for identifying an agent that modulates estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer or ER positive breast cancer progression, comprising:

(a) contacting a cell with a test compound,

25 (b) determining the expression and/or activity of a breast cancer marker in the cell, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2, and

(c) identifying an agent that modulates ER positive breast cancer wherein the agent modulates the expression and/or activity of the breast cancer marker in the cell.

62. The method of claim 61, wherein the estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is luminal B1 breast cancer.

5 63. The method of claim 61, wherein the cell comprises a breast cancer cell.

64. The method of claim 61, wherein the test compound is a small molecule, an antibody, or a nucleic acid inhibitor.

65. A compound identified by the method of claim 61.

66. A method of treating estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer in a subject,
10 comprising administering to the subject a modulator of a breast cancer marker, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.

67. The method of claim 66, wherein the modulator increases breast cancer marker level or activity.

68. The method of claim 66, wherein the modulator decreases breast cancer marker level
15 or activity.

69. A kit for detecting a breast cancer marker in a biological sample from a subject having estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer, comprising one or more reagents for measuring the level of the breast cancer marker in the biological sample from the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and
20 2 and a set of instructions for measuring the level of the breast cancer marker.

70. The kit of claim 69, wherein the reagent is an antibody that binds to the marker or an oligonucleotide that is complementary to the corresponding mRNA of the breast cancer marker.

71. The kit of claim 69, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers
25 with an increased level when compared to a predetermined threshold value, and/or one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to a predetermined threshold value.

72. The kit of claim 71, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 1, comprising CALB2, THBS1, PDCD4, SDC2, CAP2, FSTL1, ALDOA, LRP2, ACOT8,
 5 LBP, PLS3, C1orf198, COL5A1, SCCPDH, PLOD2, SLC30A1, PLSCR3, FZD1, FHL3, KRT9, LARP4, BZW2, NVL, BCKDK, TTLL12, CENPB, GPC1, RCC1, ATP2B4, DIP2C, ABCD3, FNDC1, TRIP4, PURB, PPFIBP1, ST13, SUN1, MAP4, NUCKS1, EEF1D, SBDS, MTDH, UBA52, AKT1, RNASET2, PLOD1, DIP2B, PITPNB, NUDCD3, WDR45B, SHOC2, GUK1, SPECC1, UBFD1, PRKCI, NACA, PHF14, AAAS, TBCE, EIF4G3,
 10 NT5DC2, IPO9, CFDP1, WDR26, RBM15, DAXX, MFF, and RPL22.

73. The kit of claim 71, wherein comprises one or more markers with an increased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of upregulated markers in Table 2, comprising ALDOA, LBP, C1ORF198, PURB, MAP4, DIP2B, PITPNB, TBCE, and WDR26

74. The kit of claim 71, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in Table 1, comprising GSTT1, ACSS3, MGP, FOLR2, FDXR, FUCA2, LSP1, PTGDS, PRKCB, METTL7A, HCLS1, GSTZ1, HMGA1, ARHGAP25, TPMT, DOCK2, LGALS9,
 20 ABHD14B, ACSF2, SKAP2, CLN5, LGMN, ABRACL, CTSH, CHDH, ALDH6A1, CTSS, HINT2, CPD, ELMO1, DEF6, MRPL12, IVD, STAT5A, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, ITGA3, SLFN5, DLCK8, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, PPA1, HADHB, GLOD4, DPP3, PPA2, NT5C, IST1, ARHGEF6, DDX5, C11orf98, LOC102724023, GFM2, COX5A, AK3, ITPR1, GNA13, ATP5H, GIPC1, VCP, NAGLU, ATP5J, HADHA, VPS4A, UBXN1, PITRM1,
 25 CXorf38, UBLCP1, SNU13, CNP, MICAL1, COX6B1, EHD4, TBK1, NOC3L, ATP5F1, GIT1, and MTA2.

75. The kit of claim 71, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers with a decreased level when compared to the predetermined threshold value in the subject, wherein the breast cancer marker is selected from the group of downregulated markers in
 30 Table 2, comprising ACSS3, FDXR, METTL7A, GSTZ1, TPMT, ABHD14B, ACSF2,

HINT2, CPD, DEF6, WBP2, THNSL1, DYNLL2, PTRHD1, FAHD2A, GLOD4, NT5C, IST1, GNA13, NAGLU, VPS4A, and MTA

76. A panel for use in a method of prognosing the risk of progression of estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer in a subject, the panel comprising one or more detection reagents,
5 wherein each detection reagent is specific for the detection of a breast cancer marker, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises one or more markers selected from Tables 1 and 2.
77. The panel of claim 76, wherein the breast cancer marker comprises at least two or more markers, wherein each of the two or more markers are selected from one or any combination of the proteins set forth in Tables 1 and 2.
- 10 78. A kit comprising the panel of claim 76 and a set of instructions for obtaining prognosis information based on a level of the breast cancer marker.

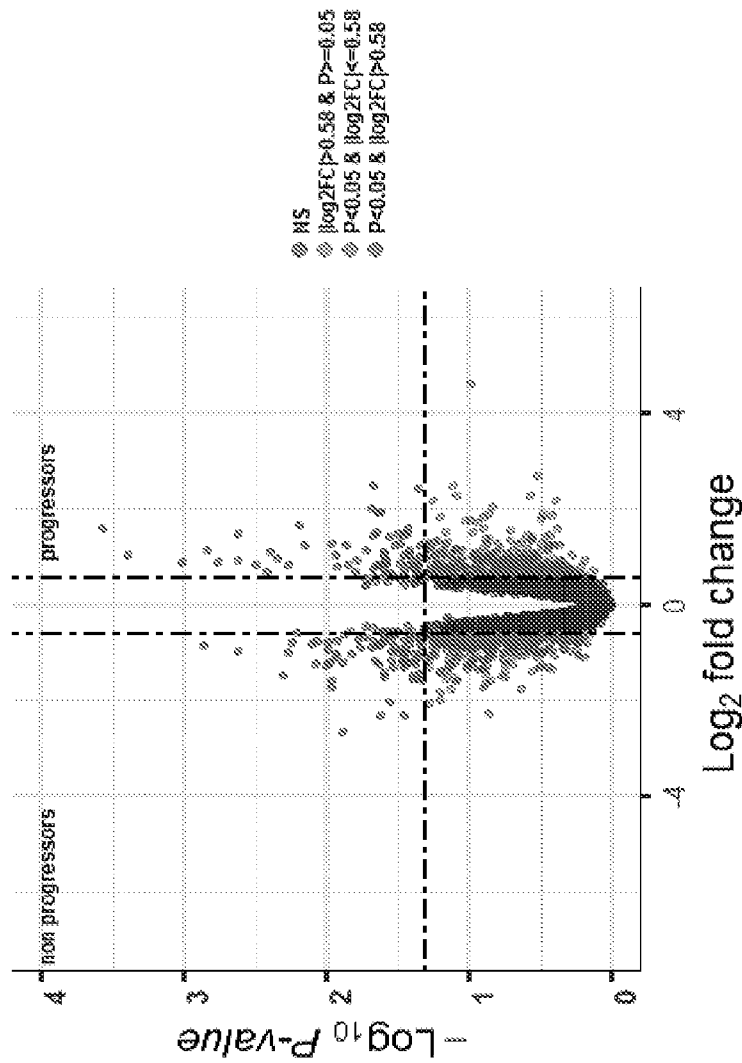
Figure 1A

ID	CBP NUMBER	Event_3years	DFSstatus	DFS_status	FINAL_SUBTYPE	ER_new
S71	100007871	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S130	100007791	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S64	100007904	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S49	100007874	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S6	100007799	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S142	100007913	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S135	100007772	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S38	100007853	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S91	100007861	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S99	100007742	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S50	100006706	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S116	100007808	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S17	100006693	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S59	100006671	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S111	100006661	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S97	100007759	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S74	100006713	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S75	100006650	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S80	100006598	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S95	100006626	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S85	100006614	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S76	100006600	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S46	100006701	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S44	100006562	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S133	100006686	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S35	100006618	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S63	100006553	no_event	non_Progressive	non_Recurrent_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S5	100006714	event	Deceased	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S103	100007986	event	Recurrent_Metastasis	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S34	100006639	event	Deceased	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S1	100007915	event	Recurrent	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S104	100007751	event	Recurrent	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S121	100006615	event	Recurrent_Metastasis	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S33	100006695	event	Recurrent	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S26	100007758	event	Recurrent	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive
S89	100006513	event	LymphNodePositive_StageIncrease	Recurrent_or_Progressive	LB1	Positive

Figure 1B

CBCP NUMBER	ID	BARCODE	AGE AT IDX	AGE AT EARLIEST RECURRENCE/ DECEASED	DFS Status Detail	DFS_days
100007986	S103	00009G0S	41	42	Recurrent_Metastatic	489
100007758	S26	000097LW	49	52	Recurrent	1444
100006615	S121	9735	50	53	Recurrent_Metastatic	1307
100006695	S33	000097DT	53	56	Recurrent	1372
100007915	S1	000090S5	64	67	Recurrent	1223
100007751	S104	000097LV	74	77	Recurrent	1280
100006513	S89	9769	71	76	LymphNodePositive_StageIncrease	1749
100006639	S34	0000975R	76	79	Deceased	1191
100006714	S5	000097GG	47	47	Deceased	92

Figure 2



- 148 significant proteins at $|\log_2 \text{FC}| > 0.58$ and $P\text{-value} < 0.05$
- 80 down-regulated and 68 up-regulated in progressors

Figure 3

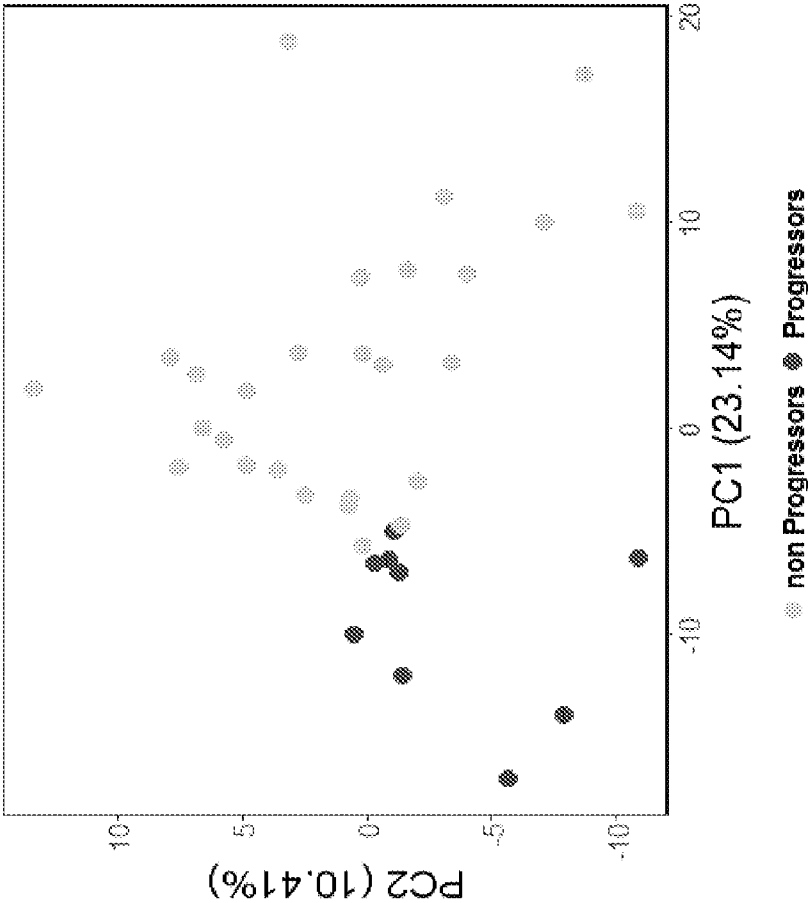


Figure 4

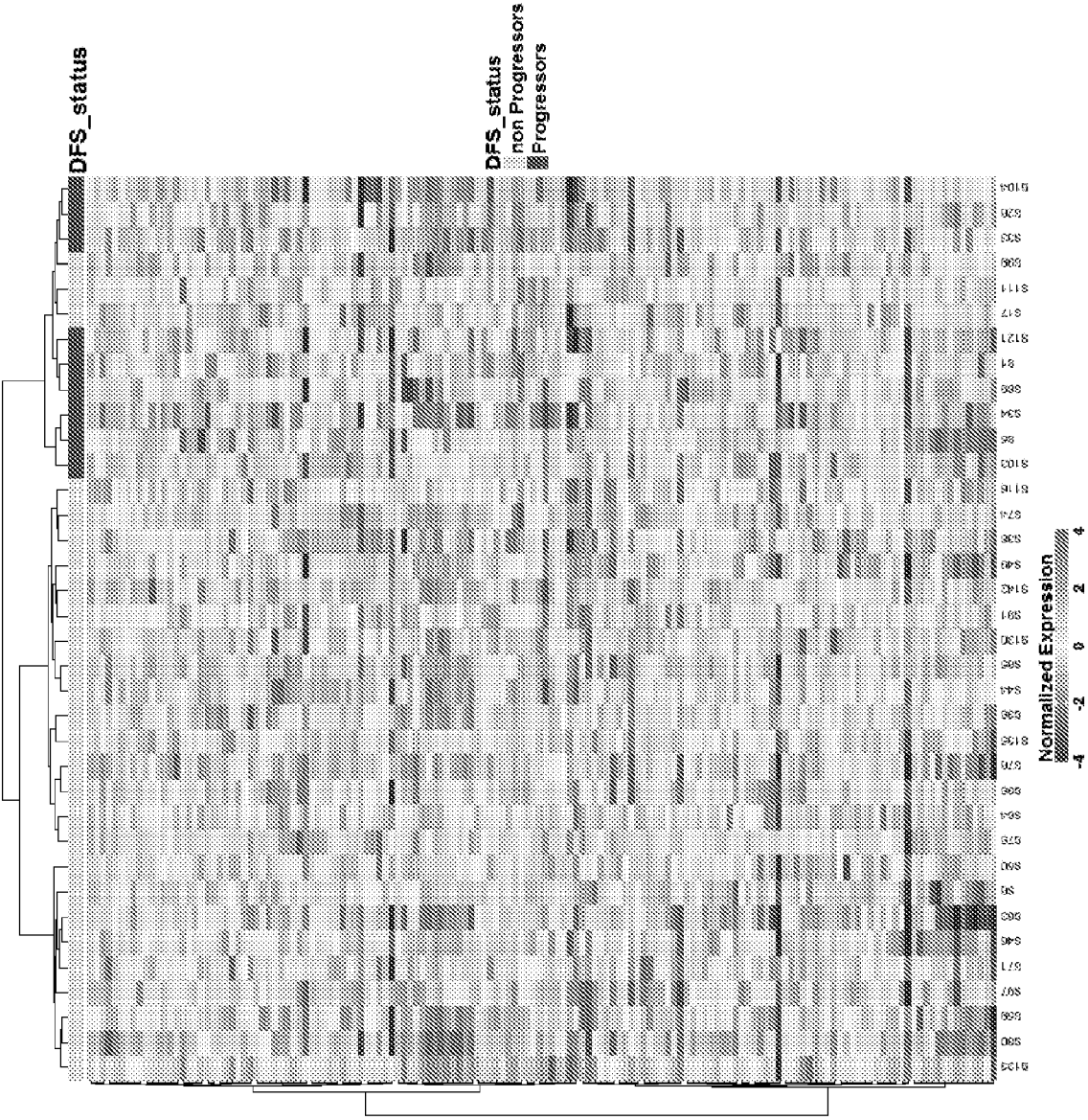
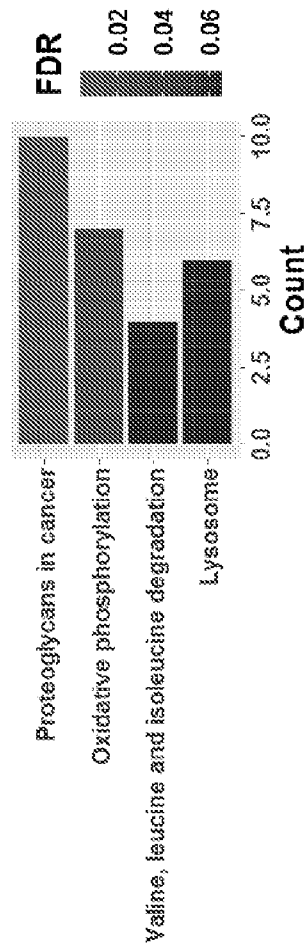


Figure 5



Pathway Analysis of significant proteins --KEGG over-representation test

Description	GeneRatio	BgRatio	pvalue	p.adjust	Count	genes
Proteoglycans in cancer	10/76	205/8041	2.05E-05	0.00445013	10	FZD1/PRKCB/THBS1/GPC1/HCLS1/ITPR1/PDCD4/AKT1/SDC2/DDX5
Oxidative phosphorylation	7/76	133/8041	0.00024468	0.02554793	7	COX6B1/ATP5H/PPA1/ATP5F1/PPA2/COX5A
Valine, leucine and isoleucine degradation	4/76	48/8041	0.001046593	0.069019889	4	HADHB/ALDH6A1/HADHA/IVD
Lysosome	6/76	128/8041	0.001272256	0.069019889	6	CLN5/CTSS/FUCA2/NAGLU/LGMN/CTSH

Proteoglycans in cancer

Genes	logFC(event/no_event)	P.Value
PRKCB	-1.567946423	0.040503025
HCLS1	-1.501101653	0.040864023
DDX5	-0.862327017	0.022571851
ITPR1	-0.814030033	0.045506944
AKT1	0.835123233	0.037727467
GPC1	1.036314927	0.03809563
FZD1	1.239374041	0.029871676
SDC2	1.919853756	0.024045014
PDCD4	1.997920947	0.020802562
THBS1	2.393169043	0.044438666

Oxidative phosphorylation

Gene	logFC(event/no_event)	P.Value
COX6B1	-0.639351951	0.049833202
ATP5H	-0.792198487	0.010363278
PPA1	-0.962208197	0.028474309
ATP5J	-0.753767893	0.021529844
ATP5F1	-0.611229782	0.038259261
PPA2	-0.903782231	0.03048384
COX5A	-0.819054711	0.023860712

Lysosome

Genes	logFC(event/no_event)	P.Value
HADHB	-0.952276154	0.010224012
ALDH6A1	-1.173855873	0.028447414
HADHA	-0.737569171	0.04567506
IVD	-1.103541261	0.01176425

Valine, leucine, isoleucine degradation

Genes	logFC(event/no_event)	P.Value
CLN5	-1.239957176	0.041388616
CTSS	-1.171097947	0.035088452
FUCA2	-1.585144663	0.010776171
NAGLU	-0.760264488	0.028311782
LGMN	-1.219320935	0.010674208
CTSH	-1.205131464	0.033717017

Figure 6
Significant proteins from both differential analysis and DFS survival outcome

Definition	Genes	lower HR (uni, cont)	upper HR (uni, cont)	p-value (uni, cont, wald)
acyl-CoA synthetase short-chain family member 3(ACSS3)	ACSS3	0.512442355	0.965200472	0.029312948
ferredoxin reductase(FDXR)	FDXR	0.239401078	0.930444657	0.030148342
methyltransferase like 7A(METTL7A)	METTL7A	0.420041741	0.967612286	0.034462145
glutathione S-transferase zeta 1(GSTZ1)	GSTZ1	0.11766498	0.823157367	0.018667127
thiopurine S-methyltransferase (TPMT)	TPMT	0.353793701	0.971480378	0.038242215
alcohol dehydrogenase domain containing 148(ABHD148)	ABHD148	0.166941702	0.779765675	0.005155705
acyl-CoA synthetase family member 2(ACSF2)	ACSF2	0.296619164	0.837063754	0.008489003
histidine triad nucleotide binding protein 2(HINT2)	HINT2	0.314813714	0.885783764	0.015540534
carboxypeptidase D(CPD)	CPD	0.192787095	0.895108969	0.024905023
DEF6, guanine nucleotide exchange factor(DEF6)	DEF6	0.257897949	0.925884168	0.028085454
WW domain binding protein 2(WBP2)	WBP2	0.098013482	0.773171372	0.014356831
threonine synthase like 1(THNSL1)	THNSL1	0.345650653	0.8748571	0.011592425
dynein light chain LC8-type 2(DYNLL2)	DYNLL2	0.28977654	0.884173301	0.01673541
peptidyl-tRNA hydrolase domain containing 1(PTRHD1)	PTRHD1	0.104742355	0.775348141	0.01396504
fumarate hydratase domain containing 2A(FAHD2A)	FAHD2A	0.009701502	0.404677537	0.00360866
glyoxalase domain containing 4(GLO4)	GLO4	0.147197503	0.910484456	0.030641262
5', 3'-nucleotidase, cytosolic(NTSC)	NTSC	0.123675423	0.788343015	0.013767929
ST1, ESCRT-III associated factor(ST1)	ST1	0.027050293	0.574331847	0.007553643
ES1 protein homolog, mitochondrial(LOC102724023)	LOC10272	0.125223219	0.847172648	0.021447036
G protein subunit alpha 13(GNA13)	GNA13	0.048457153	0.510666047	0.00208
N-acetyl-alpha-glucosaminidase(NAGLU)	NAGLU	0.227565513	0.91680908	0.02750155
hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase/3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase/enoyl-CoA hydratase (trifunctional protein), alpha subunit(HADHA)	HADHA	0.25582109	0.966603635	0.03986435
vesicular protein sorting 4 homolog A(VPS4A)	VPS4A	0.087326827	0.920354909	0.035895801
UBX domain protein 1(UBXN1)	UBXN1	0.172818556	0.821682967	0.014137309
cytochrome c oxidase subunit 6B1(COX6B1)	COX6B1	0.086516302	0.747123722	0.012773452
NOC3 like DNA replication regulator(NOC3L)	NOC3L	0.141670034	0.872694447	0.024224094
metastasis associated 1 family member 2(MTA2)	MTA2	0.027684624	0.481763931	0.003055316
WD repeat domain 26(WDR26)	WDR26	1.221806518	10.07505587	0.019691106
tubulin folding cofactor E(TBCE)	TBCE	1.183565815	7.458265801	0.020403226
PHD finger protein 14(PHF14)	PHF14	1.240133062	10.57966305	0.018597311
phosphatidylinositol transfer protein beta(PITPNB)	PITPNB	1.201874496	10.88677919	0.022192447
disco interacting protein 2 homolog B(DIP2B)	DIP2B	1.052963132	3.009190389	0.031348587
eukaryotic translation elongation factor 1 delta(EEF1D)	EEF1D	2.270524544	32.22693953	0.001515591
microtubule associated protein 4(MAP4)	MAP4	1.319102889	10.16634739	0.012717601
Sed1 and UNC84 domain containing 1(SUN1)	SUN1	1.184951808	5.571851776	0.016862799
purine rich element binding protein 8(PUR8)	PUR8	1.126973221	4.224369952	0.020635762
ATP binding cassette subfamily D member 3(ABCD3)	ABCD3	1.093760406	3.274766318	0.027588709
keratin 9(KRT9)	KRT9	1.151880318	3.828440324	0.015459167
chromosome 1 open reading frame 198(C1orf198)	C1orf198	1.337543408	4.089062607	0.002880969
lipopolysaccharide binding protein(LBP)	LBP	1.127629278	2.089106014	0.006453682
aldolase, fructose-bisphosphate A(ALDOA)	ALDOA	1.511751411	4.895701856	0.000844654